Guidelines for Encoding Critical Editions for the Library of Digital Latin Texts

2017-11-30

1   Acknowledgments

The following guidelines are the product of a collaboration between Samuel J. Huskey (University of Oklahoma) and Hugh Cayless (Duke Collaboratory for Classical Computing), but many others deserve acknowledgment for their contributions.

Cynthia Damon (University of Pennsylvania) and Robert Kaster (Princeton University) read and commented on the guidelines from their perspectives as editors of critical texts. Their insights into the methods and practice of textual criticism, particularly with regard to terminology, have been invaluable. They also contributed pilot projects for use in evaluating and refining the encoding guidelines. In addition, Robert Kaster devoted considerable time to developing the typology of variant readings in the section "Tagging Readings for Analysis." Since that typology is the basis for a significant feature of the Library of Digital Latin Texts, his efforts deserve special recognition here.

Tom Elliott (Institute for the Study of the Ancient World, New York University) contributed valuable insights and suggestions throughout, but particularly with regard to the sections "People" and "Places."

Jeffrey C. Witt (Loyola University, Maryland) also contributed to the development of these guidelines by sharing the encoding guidelines for his own project, Lombard Press (`http://lombardpress.org/`).

Jim Ginther (St. Michael's College, University of Toronto), Patrick Cuba (St. Louis University), Joshua D. Sosin (Duke University), and Jeffrey C. Witt (Loyola University, Maryland) participated in technical meetings to discuss various aspects of this project.

Chris Weaver (University of Oklahoma) and June Abbas (University of Oklahoma), both co-PI's with Huskey on the Digital Latin Library project, provided important comments and insights from their perspectives in the fields of computer science and library and information studies, respectively.

The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation provided funding for the development of these guidelines.

Finally, the many contributors to the standard established and maintained by Text Encoding Initiative (TEI) deserve the gratitude of anyone involved in humanities computing. The LDLT guidelines are a customization of the TEI and the EpiDoc guidelines for XML text markup of ancient documents, to which they also owe much.

2   Getting Started

These Guidelines describe how to create a critical edition for the Digital Latin Library's *Library of Digital Latin Texts*. The LDLT uses a customization of the standard established by the Text Encoding Initiative (TEI). LDLT texts are in a format called XML, which uses tags wrapped in angle brackets to mark various aspects of the text. XML is a 'plain text' format, meaning writing programs like Microsoft Word are not suitable for editing it. We recommend you either purchase an XML editor, like oXygen, or use a free text editor, ideally with XML support. Atom, with the linter-autocomplete-jing plugin is one example. Oxygen comes with a lot of built-in TEI support, so it may give you a better experience.

There are some very basic rules to editing XML documents you should be aware of: XML tags (or elements) must nest properly. If you open one (e.g. `<p>`), you must close it (`</p>`) or have it close itself (e.g. `<ptr/>`). You can have only one root element (`<TEI>` in this case). Some special characters (especially <) need to be escaped (`<` is how you do a left angle branket). LDLT documents use a 'schema' to check whether the tags you've used are in the right places. In general, you can only put certain tags in certain locations, so no <div>s (which mark a section of text, e.g. a chapter) inside a <p> (a paragraph), for example (because that would be silly). The schema contains rules that enforce these kinds of restrictions. Your editing program should tell you when and where you've done something

wrong, and should help you out by telling you what tags you're allowed to use at any given spot. We have provided a template file to get you started with your edition.

3   Structure of an LDLT Edition

This section describes the basic structure of the file containing an edition for the LDLT. The structure of an LDLT edition resembles the structure of a traditional printed critical edition.**Parts of an LDLT Edition**

- Publication Details

- Front Matter (preface, description of manuscripts, bibliography, etc.)

- Critical Text (including critical apparatus and other critical aids)

- Indices

Since every text is unique, not every LDLT edition will have all of these sections. The nature of the text and the editor's judgment will determine the contents of an edition. The purpose of this section is to define the parts of an LDLT edition and provide guidelines for representing them in XML.

3.1   General Structure of an LDLT Edition

The following is an example of the general overall structure of an XML file for an LDLT edition:

```xml
<teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
        <titleStmt>
            <title>Title of Work</title>
            <author>Name of Author</author>
            <editor>Name of Editor</editor>
        </titleStmt>
        <editionStmt>
            <edition>First Edition</edition>
        </editionStmt>
        <publicationStmt>
            <publisher>Society for Classical Studies</publisher>
            <distributor>Digital Latin Library</distributor>
            <date>2016</date>
            <availability>
                <license target="https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/">Distributed under
                    International License.</license>
            </availability>
        </publicationStmt>
        <seriesStmt>
            <title level="s">Library of Digital Latin Texts</title>
            <biblScope unit="vol">1</biblScope>
        </seriesStmt>
        <sourceDesc>
            <p>Born digital.</p>
        </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
                        <text>
                            <front xml:id="front">
                                <div type="section" xml:id="preface">
                                    <head>Preface</head>
                                    <p>General introductory remarks about the edition.</p>
                                    <div type="section"
 xml:id="preface-section-1">
```

```
<!--This is a section within the preface. Editors should use
sections (distinguished by <div>) to organize the content of the edition's
preface.-->
                                    </div>
                                  </div>
                                  <div type="section" xml:id="bibliography">
                                        <head>Bibliography</head>

<!--This is where the bibliography for the edition is listed, including manuscript
descriptions, and lists of early editions, modern editions, and other sources cited
in the current edition. For more information on encoding the items in the
bibliography
see section 3 Bibliography below. -->

                                      <div type="section" xml:id="conspectus">
                                            <head>Conspectus</head>

<!--A key to the special sigla and abbreviations used in the edition (drawn
from the @xml:id's assigned to the various items in the
bibliography). The list of sigla may be generated automatically. -->
                                      </div>
                                  </div>
                              </front>

                              <body>
                                    <div type="edition" xml:id="edition-text"
 xml:space="preserve">
    <div type="textpart" n="1" xml:id="part1">
        <head>Title of First Part</head>

<!--Text goes here, according to the conventions laid out elsewhere in these
guidelines.-->
    </div>
    <div type="textpart" n="2" xml:id="part2">
        <head>Title of Second Part</head>

<!--Each new major section (e.g., book, volume) has a new <div>.-->
    </div>
 </div>
                                    </body>
                                    <back>

<!--The content of the back matter will be determined in consultation between
the editor and the staff of the DLL. Because LDLT editions are encoded, the
matter traditionally found in the back of a printed critical edition may be
generated by applications instead of having to be entered manually.
Nevertheless, there is space here for notes, indices, and other kinds of
information.-->
                                    </back>
                            </text>
```

3.2   Publication Details

A traditional critical edition in print has a title page announcing the title of the work, its author, the editor(s), and details of publication. In an LDLT edition, these details are presented as structured data within a TEI header (<teiHeader>). For example:

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
```

```
   <titleStmt>
    <title>Bucolica</title>
    <author>Calpurnius Siculus</author>
    <editor>Jane Doe</editor>
   </titleStmt>
   <editionStmt>
    <edition>First Edition</edition>
   </editionStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Society for Classical Studies</publisher>
    <distributor>Digital Latin Library</distributor>
    <date>2016</date>
    <availability>
     <license target="https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/4.0/">Distributed
under a Creative Commons Attribution 4.0
             International License.</license>
    </availability>
   </publicationStmt>
   <seriesStmt>
    <title level="s">Library of Digital Latin Texts</title>
    <biblScope unit="vol">1</biblScope>
   </seriesStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>Born digital.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

Since a critical edition is often based upon many sources (e.g., manuscripts, previous editions, commentaries, etc.), the <teiHeader> for an LDLT edition does not hew strictly to the TEI guidelines for <sourceDesc>. The sources for an LDLT edition are documented and described in the edition's front matter.

Just as an editor is not expected to create the title page and document the publication information, this section of an LDLT text is the responsibility of the DLL staff.

3.3   Front Matter

The <front> contains divisions and subdivisions (using <div>) corresponding to the preface, bibliography, and conspectus for the edition.

The **preface** lays out (in prose, using <p>) the argument for the edition. It also describes the textual tradition and its major sources. It is recommended to compile the bibliography first, to facilitate linking to the individual entries as they are mentioned in the preface.

The elements available in all TEI documents are available for use in the preface. For example, an editor might want to make a table comparing the readings of manuscript families. In that case, the editor would use <table> and its related elements (see the TEI guidelines for `table` for more information).

4   Bibliography

The bibliography presents opportunities for leveraging the digital nature of an LDLT edition. For this reason, every item in the bibliography is encoded as structured data (contained in <witness> or <bibl>), so that the bibliography itself can become a useful tool for finding and using resources, especially those available online.

The bibliography is all the more useful as a tool if it is created and made available via Zotero, an open online resource for building and managing bibliographies. It is highly recommended, but not required, that all LDLT editions have a corresponding Zotero repository for their bibliography. Editors should consult with LDLT staff about setting up and sharing a Zotero repository.

4.1   Structure of the Bibliography

The bibliography should be organized according to the following structure:

- Manuscripts (*xml:id*="bibliography-manuscripts")

- Editions

    - Early Editions (*xml:id*="bibliography-editions-witnesses")
    - Modern Editions (*xml:id*="bibliography-editions-sources")

- Secondary Sources (*xml:id*="bibliography-secondary-sources")

Additionally, there should be a list of the names of individual scholars (*xml:id*="bibliography-scholars") referred to by name in the apparatus, if they are not listed elsewhere in the bibliography (e.g., as the editor of an edition or author of an article). It is common, for example, to refer to a scholar whose unpublished notes appear in a commentary or who has corresponded with the editor. For ease of reference, these sources should be listed with information about where the information can be verified.

4.2   Terminology: Witness and Source

Editors consult many types of documents and publications in the process of creating critical editions: manuscripts, incunabula, modern editions, monographs, articles, notes, correspondence, etc. Some of these types (i.e., manuscripts and incunables) are commonly referred to as "witnesses," since they stand in close relationship to a certain version of the text. The term "witness" cannot be applied to the other types, since they do not cleave to one exemplar, but rather reflect a broad range of sources (including scholarly conjecture).

This issue is raised here because the model for LDLT editions requires precision in the use of the terms "witness" and "source," particularly with regard to the encoding of the critical apparatus, where *wit* (witness) and *source* (external source) are used to classify variant readings. The classification of resources as witnesses and sources also affects how they are encoded in the bibliography, since the former are contained in <listWit>, the latter in <listBibl>.

For the purposes of these guidelines, manuscripts and some incunabula retain their traditional distinction as witnesses, but that category has been enlarged to include manuscript hands, which may bear witness to alternative readings, glosses, marginalia, corrections, and conjectures. This is a departure from the TEI's guidelines on Manuscript Description, which treat the manuscript itself as a witness, but consider hands as agents responsible for specific textual content. It is up to the editor to determine whether an incunabulum is a witness to a single manuscript.

All other resources cited in an edition fall under the category of "source," a capacious term that refers to any resource external to the current edition.

4.3   Human- and Machine-Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations

Printed editions have long used a system of references for manuscripts and other materials in the bibliography. For example, single letters, or *sigla*, stand for manuscripts, and the last names of scholars stand for editions, commentaries, or other works of scholarship. Centuries of use have demontrated that this system of sigla and other symbols and abbreviations is an efficient, effective, and economical way of presenting the complex information contained in critical editions. Although its development was motivated by the constraints of the printed page, its virtues for representing data commend it for other media, too. But just as the printed page has limits, so too does the digital file, which means that the traditional system requires an update to make it useful in a digital context.

Given some guidance and experience, people can learn how to navigate the system of letters, numbers, symbols, and other typographical conventions for referring to the sources of a crtical edition. If one edition uses superscript numerals to indicate the hands that wrote in a manuscript, but another uses

superscript numerals to signify the number of a manuscript in a collection, a human reader can adjust to the difference in meaning without much effort. In contrast, machines need clear instructions and a reliable set of rules for reading a digital file. For example, a human might see $\mathbf{N^2}$ and correctly interpret it within a particular edition as meaning "text written by the second in a succession of people who wrote in the manuscript known as codex Neapolitanus V A 8." Without explicit instructions, a machine will interpret the same information as simply the letter "N" with a superscript numeral 2 next to it. A less experienced human reader might reach the same conclusion as the machine.

Since the audience for LDLT editions includes an entirely new class of reader (i.e., machines), it stands to reason that the reference system should be adapted to accommodate the needs of the expanded readership. For this reason, LDLT editions encode sigla and other aspects of the traditional reference system in two ways: a machine-readable version (using *xml:id*) and a human-readable version (using <abbr>, with special instructions for rendering typographical conventions such as superscript and subscript notation). In some cases, the values for both will be the same, but the strict rules of the XML specification for *xml:id* do not allow for the traditional system of combining letters with superscript and/or subscript numerals. Nevertheless, the values of *xml:id* and <abbr> should be similar, if not identical, to each other, and they should be meaningful. Editors should follow the conventions in previous editions of the same text, changing a siglum only if it is important to the edition's argument. If the text has never been edited, the editor should choose sigla according to the principles outlined by West (74–75). In brief, sigla should have mnemonic value (e.g., "V" for "Vaticanus" or "P" for "Parisinus").

Because the needs of editors will vary from edition to edition, the LDLT does not have strict rules for representing manuscript hands or similar information. The following suggestion might be useful:

Information	Example Value of *xml:id*	Example Value of <abbr>
A single manuscript	V	V
Manuscript Hands	Vh1, Vh2	V^1, V^2
Multiple manuscripts from one collection	Vms1, Vms2	V_1, V_2
One of many indistinguishable hands	Vrec	V^{rec}
Fragments of ancient copies	Π1, Π2	Π^1, Π^2
Consensus of manuscripts	ω	ω
One or more late manuscripts	□ (see note below)	□
Scholia	Σ	Σ
Scholia in a certain manuscript	Σa, Σb	Σ^a, Σ^b
Multiple editions	Schenkl1, Schenkl2	$Schenkl^1$, $Schenkl^2$
Multiple books or articles by the same scholar	Burm1731, Burm1759	Burm. 1731, Burm. 1759

The lower-case character "stigma" (□) is, due to an oversight in the XML Specification, an illegal value for *xml:id*, so the upper-case character (□) is used in its place in this example. For more on this issue, see Cayless "TEI Next."

In short, **every entry, regardless of type, in the bibliography of an LDLT edition must have values for both *xml:id* and <abbr>.** Otherwise, the edition will not be able to make full use of the digital format. Morever, if an entry lacks <abbr>, it will not be available for a print version of the edition, should one be required.

4.3.1 Catch-all References

Sometimes it is necessary to use a siglum to stand for the consensus of a particular group of manuscripts (e.g., ω or □). Consensus sigla should be defined in the <listWit> as described in the section "Manuscripts."

"Catch-all" references can also be useful: *codd.* or *mss.* for "the manuscripts," *cett.* for "the other manuscripts," *edd.* for "the editions," etc. It might also be necessary to indicate that, in general, all editions before or after one in particular have a certain reading (e.g., *edd. ante*Burm., Burm. *sqq.*).

It is customary to define catch-all references in the *conspectus siglorum* or elsewhere in the preface. Since the conspectus will be generated automatically based on information provided in the bibliography, catch-all abbreviations and phrases must be defined in a simple list at the end of the bibliography, each with its own *xml:id* and <abbr>:

<list> contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

<item> contains one component of a list.

- <list> with *xml:id* with a value of "bibliography-catch-all" contains the catch-all references as items.

- <item> with <abbr>contains a single abbreviation or phrase used as a catch-all reference in the edition. Each <item> should have an *xml:id* based on the abbreviation or phrase in <abbr>.

```
<list xml:id="bibliography-catch-all">
 <head>General References</head>
 <item xml:id="codd">
  <abbr type="siglum">codd.</abbr> = The
     manuscripts (<hi rend="italic">codices</hi>) not otherwise
     mentioned.</item>
 <item xml:id="">
  <abbr type="siglum">edd.</abbr> = The editions not
     otherwise mentioned.</item>
</list>
```

See the section "Use of Catch-all References in the Critical Apparatus" for guidelines on usage.

4.4 Manuscripts

The description of manuscripts is a discipline unto itself, with long-established conventions for capturing all of the details about not only a manuscript's contents, but also its dimensions, provenance, material, and other details. It is customary for critical editions to provide a brief prose description of the major manuscripts used for establishing the text, usually only enough to identify where the manuscript may be found for consultation, but sometimes including information about its provenance and other details relevant to the edition (e.g., manuscript hands).

The prose format for describing manuscripts is a predictable and efficient way of conveying this information to human readers, but it is not useful for making the information available to machines for processing. That is why the TEI guidelines have an entire module (10 Manuscript Description) for making manuscript descriptions available as structured data for machine-readability. This section is a customization of that module for LDLT editions.

This section establishes a minimum requirement for describing a manuscript in an LDLT edition so that the information can be processed and displayed as expected. It also includes instructions for encoding a finer degree of detail. Above all, the point is to make the information available to both human and machine readers. It is up to individual editors to use their best judgment regarding the amount of information that will be relevant to those seeking to understand the place of a manuscript in the tradition.

4.4.1 Manuscript Description

The TEI's module for manuscript description offers a model for presenting nearly every imaginable detail about a manuscript as structured data. Editors may wish to use more of the features of the module than are described here, but the LDLT viewer will display only the following:

\<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically.

\<witness> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil.

\<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

\<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object.

\<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described.

\<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit.

\<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution.

\<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.

\<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number.

\<msContents> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items.

\<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class.

\<objectDesc> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described.

\<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript.

\<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript.

\<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part.

\<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part.

\<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition.

- \<listWit> (list of witnesses) contains the descriptions of manuscript witnesses for the edition. Separate \<listWit> elements may be used to distinguish families of manuscripts (see section "Manuscript Families").

- \<witness> groups the information about a single manuscript, archetype, or hyparchetype. The *xml:id* of each \<witness> is the unique machine-readable identifier to be used when referring to the manuscript's data (e.g., in the *wit* of a \<rdg> in the apparatus criticus).

- \<abbr> contains the human-readable siglum that should be displayed on screen or printed. Any superscript or subscript characters should be encoded using \<hi> with the appropriate value for *rend*.

- \<msDesc> (manuscript description) groups the elements that compose the description of the manuscript:

- <msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) groups information about the location and inventory number of the manuscript.

- <settlement> contains the common English name of the place (e.g., Florence, not Firenze) where the manuscript is located.

- <repository> contains the name of the library or other institution that houses the manuscript. Use the original name of the institution (e.g., Biblioteca Ambrosiana), not an English translation.

- <idno> (identifier) contains the catalog or inventory information for the manuscript, including the name of the collection (e.g., Ottobonianus 1466). The point is to give enough information for a reader to be able to request more information about it.

- <altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains other information (i.e., in addition to the main <idno>) used to identify the manuscript. For example, the manuscript may have been recataloged, but its old number is still used. <altIdentifier> can also contain <idno> with *type*="URI" to record the location of a digital representation of the manuscript.

- <msContents> (manuscript contents) contains a prose description (using <p>) of the manuscript's contents. Encode each work with <bibl> with <author> and <title>.

- <phsyDesc> (physical description) groups information about the manuscript.

- <objectDesc> (object description) contains a prose description (using <p>) of the manuscript's physical characteristics (e.g., material(s), size, pagination, lines per page, etc.). It is up to the editor to decide how to present this information, but it is recommended to adopt a pattern and use it consistently (e.g., "Parchment: 261 × 160 mm.: 116 leaves: 38 verses per page"). Note that the TEI module for manuscript description has tags for these details. Editors may use them, but they will not affect the display or functionality of the LDLT edition.

- <handDesc> (hand description) groups information about the distinct hands that wrote in the manuscript. *hands* may be used to indicate the number of hands detectable in the manuscript.

- <handNote> contains a prose description (using <p>) of a hand that wrote in the manuscript. Each <handNote> has an *xml:id* with a unique identifier (based on the *xml:id* of the manuscript) and <abbr> with a human-readable version of the value of the hand's *xml:id* (see the section "Human- and Machine-Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations" for more information).

- <history> groups information about the date of the manuscript.

- <origin> contains a prose description (using <p>) of the manuscript's date. For a range of dates, use <origDate> with *notAfter* and *notBefore*.

- <provenance> contains a prose description (using <p>) of the manuscript's provenance, if available.

The absolute minimum required for LDLT editions can be met with <listWit>, <witness>, and <abbr>:

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="N">
  <abbr type="siglum">N</abbr> = Codex
     Neapolitanus V A 8, saec. XV</witness>
 <witness xml:id="G">
  <abbr type="siglum">G</abbr> = Codex Gaddianus
     pl. 90, 12 inf., saec. XV</witness>
</listWit>
```

That example provides enough human- and machine-readable information to identify the manuscripts in the apparatus criticus, but it leaves much to be desired by anyone hoping to learn more about the manuscripts or locate them for private study.

The following example uses all of the elements listed above to provide rich human- and machine-readable information about the same manuscripts:

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="N">
  <abbr type="siglum">N</abbr> = Codex
     Neapolitanus V A 8 <msDesc>
   <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Naples</settlement>
    <repository>Biblioteca Nazionale di Napoli</repository>
    <idno>V A 8</idno>
    <altIdentifier>
     <idno>380</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
   </msIdentifier>
   <msContents>
    <p>1-36ʳ contain Cato's <bibl>
      <title>De
              Agricultura</title>
    </bibl>; 20-101ʳ, Varro's
    <bibl>
     <title>De Re Rustica</title>
    </bibl>;
            101ʳ-115ᵛ, the <bibl>
     <title>Bucolica</title>
    </bibl>
            of Calpurnius and Nemesianus.</p>
    <p>The individual poems lack titles, but they are
            separated from each other by brief spaces. The
            following subscription appears at the end of the
            whole work: <quote xml:lang="lat">Aureliani
              Nemesiani Cartaḡ bucol' explicit: Deo
              gratias amen</quote>. Finally, another more recent
            hand, as <ref target="#Bursian">Bursian</ref> and
     <ref target="#Schenkl">Schenkl</ref> recognized,
            wrote <quote xml:lang="lat">Calpurnii
              eclogae</quote> and <quote xml:lang="lat">Nemesiani eclogae</quote>.
The remaining leaves
            are blank.</p>
   </msContents>
   <physDesc>
    <objectDesc>
     <p>Parchment: 261 × 160 mm.: 116 leaves: 38 verses
            per page.</p>
     <p>With respect to correcting hands, two in
            particular stand out:</p>
    </objectDesc>
    <handDesc hands="3">
     <handNote xml:id="Nms1">
      <abbr type="siglum">N<hi rend="superscript">1</hi></abbr> belongs to the
            original copyist. See <ref target="#Ndesc-firsthand">above</ref> for
a
            detailed description of this hand's
            activity.</handNote>
     <handNote xml:id="Nms2">
      <abbr type="siglum">N<hi rend="superscript">2</hi></abbr>: The manuscript
            was corrected again around the same time, but here
            and there the second hand cannot easily be
```

```
                          distinguished from the first.</handNote>
      <handNote xml:id="Nms3">
       <abbr type="siglum">N<hi rend="superscript">3</hi></abbr>: a third hand's
                emendations can be discerned in only a few
                places.</handNote>
     </handDesc>
    </physDesc>
    <history>
     <origin>
      <p>The manuscript was written at about the beginning
                of the <origDate notAfter="1500"
        notBefore="1400">fifteenth century</origDate>.</p>
     </origin>
     <provenance>
      <p>We know nothing about the origin and provenance
                of this manuscript except what is understood from
                the following passages written on the last leaf:
       <quote xml:lang="lat">Joannes Antonius Perillus
                 patric. neap. ac iuvenis apprime litteratus
                 Jacobum Perillum hoc libro donavit MDCVII, Klis
                 Juniis</quote> ("Joannes Antonius Perillus, a
                nobleman of Naples and most learned gentleman,
                gave this book to Jacob Perillus in 1667 on the
                first of June"), and a little below, <quote xml:lang="lat">Antonii
Seripandi ex Jacobi Perilli
                 amici opt. munere</quote> ("This book belongs to
                Antonius Seripandus, received as a gift from his
                best friend Jacob Perillus"). Later it was brought
                to the library of San Giovanni a Carbonara, and
                from there it came to the greatest library in
                Naples, formerly known as the <orgName>Reale
                 biblioteca borbonica</orgName>, (now the <orgName ref="http://www.bnnonline.it">B
nazionale
                 Vittorio Emanuele III</orgName>).</p>
     </provenance>
    </history>
   </msDesc></witness>
 <witness xml:id="G">
  <abbr type="siglum">G</abbr> = Codex Gaddianus
     pl. 90, 12 inf. <msDesc>
   <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Florence</settlement>
    <repository>Biblioteca Medicea Laurenziana</repository>
    <idno>plut. 90, 12 inf.</idno>
   </msIdentifier>
   <msContents>
    <p>It contains the twelve eclogues of Francesco Petrarch
            (ff. 1-44), the <bibl>
     <title>Culex</title>
    </bibl> of
            Vergilius Maro, the
    <bibl>
     <title>Dirae</title>
    </bibl> of Vergilius
            Maro (ff. 52-55), and Calpurnius and Nemesianus (ff.
            55-74). A very brief, unattributed eclogue follows
            with the interlocutors Daphnis, Tityrus, Mopsus, and
            Meliboeus.</p>
    <p>The following inscription has been added to the
            eclogues of Calpurnius: <quote xml:lang="lat">Egloge
             Calfurnii ad nemesianum cartaginiensem.</quote>
             (<quote>The Eclogues of Calfurnius to Nemesianus
```

11

```
                        of Carthage</quote>). Nemesianus follows
                Calpurnius with the following title prefixed: <quote xml:lang="lat">Aureliani
nemesiani cartaginiensis
                egloghe incipiunt</quote> (<quote>Here begin the
                eclogues of Aurelianus Nemesianus of
                Carthage</quote>). At the end of each eclogue
                there appears an <hi rend="italic">explicit</hi>
                with the number of each eclogue, but Calpurnius'
                sixth eclogue lacks a subscription, and the
                following is written at the end of the seventh:
      <quote xml:lang="lat">explicit sexta egloga
                Calphurnii</quote> (<quote>Here ends the sixth
                eclogue of Calphurnius</quote>). This is explained
                by the fact that the seventh eclogue follows the
                sixth without any break, with the result that only
                six eclogues are attributed to Calpurnius in this
                manuscript. But in the margin, where the sixth
                eclogue ought to end, the copyist has added the
                following: <quote xml:lang="lat">aliqui volunt
                  dicere quod ista sit alia et diversa egloga ubi
                  incipit "lentus," aliqui dicunt quod est una
                  etc.</quote> (<quote>Some wish to say that the
                  eclogue that begins <hi rend="italic">lentus</hi>
                  is a completely different eclogue; others say that
                  it is the same, etc.</quote>).</p>
    </msContents>
    <physDesc>
     <objectDesc>
      <p>Paper: 294 × 225 mm.: 74 leaves. Individual pages
                generally have 29 verses, but some vary, with the
                shorter ones having 26 and the longer ones having
                32 verses.</p>
     </objectDesc>
     <handDesc hands="2">
      <handNote xml:id="Gms1">
       <abbr type="siglum">G<hi rend="superscript">1</hi></abbr>: The copyist
                himself added almost all of the corrections either
                by removing scribal errors in the verses or adding
                variant readings to the margin. See <ref target="#Gdesc-hand">above</ref>
for a more
                detailed description of this hand's
                activity.</handNote>
      <handNote xml:id="Gms2">
       <abbr type="siglum">G<hi rend="superscript">2</hi></abbr>: Some corrections
                seem to have been made by another hand.</handNote>
     </handDesc>
    </physDesc>
    <history>
     <origin>
      <p>Written at the <origDate notAfter="1500"
        notBefore="1400">beginning of the fifteenth
                century</origDate>.</p>
     </origin>
    </history>
   </msDesc></witness>
</listWit>
```

4.4.2   Manuscript Families, Archetypes, and Hyparchetypes

Sigla may be assigned to families of manuscripts, archetypes, and hyparchetypes so that they may be referred to in the apparatus criticus or elsewhere. As indicated in the section "Human- and Machine-

Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations," each family, archetype, and hyparchetype must have both a unique *xml:id* (machine-readable siglum) and an <abbr> (human-readable siglum).

Manuscript Families

Since the family is not itself a physical object, but a concept (i.e., a group of related manuscripts), its siglum is assigned to <listWit> as the container of the individual <witness> elements that describe the manuscripts in the family.

In the following example, <listWit> has the *xml:id* V for the machine-readable siglum; <head> contains the name of the family and the human-readable siglum in <abbr>.

```
<listWit xml:id="V">
 <head>First Family (<abbr type="siglum">V</abbr>)</head>
 <witness xml:id="A">
<!-- Description of manuscript A -->
 </witness>
 <witness xml:id="B">
<!-- Description of manuscript B -->
 </witness>
<!-- Et cetera -->
</listWit>
```

Archetypes and Hyparchetypes

An archetype is the most recent common ancestor of the known manuscripts (cf. West 32). A hyparchetype is the ancestor of a branch of a family of manuscripts. In editions of Latin texts, both archetypes and hyparchetypes are commonly represented with lower case Greek letters.

For example, Robert Kaster assigns the siglum ω to the archetype of the manuscripts of Suetonius' *De Vita Caesarum*. The manuscripts can be analyzed into two families that stem from two hyparchetypes, to which Kaster has assigned the sigla α and β. The two families have branches, each with their own hyparchetype (α_1 α_2 β_1 β_2).

Kaster lists the sigla as follows:

- ω archetypus codicum αβ
    - α hyparchetypus codicum α_1 α_2
        * α_1 hyparchetypus codicum MG
            · M Paris. lat. 6115 s. $IX^{1/2}$ (an. c. 820?)
            · G Guelf. 4573 (Gud. lat. 268), s. $XI^{3/4}$
        * etc.

Though no longer extant, archetypes and hyparchetypes can be referred to as witnesses to readings. Therefore, they are encoded with <witness>. The following example demonstrates how Kaster's list should be encoded:

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="ω">
  <abbr type="siglum">ω</abbr> = archetypus
     codicum αβ <listWit>
   <witness xml:id="a">
    <abbr type="siglum">α</abbr> =
         hyparchetypus codicum α<hi rend="subscript">1</hi>
         α<hi rend="subscript">2</hi>
    <listWit>
     <witness xml:id="α1">
      <abbr type="siglum">α<hi rend="subscript">1</hi></abbr> = hyparchetypus
            codicum MG <listWit>
```

```
        <witness xml:id="M">
         <abbr type="siglum">M</abbr>
<!-- Description of witness M -->
        </witness>
        <witness xml:id="G">
         <abbr type="siglum">G</abbr>
<!-- Description of witness G -->
        </witness>
       </listWit></witness>
     </listWit></witness>
   </listWit></witness>
</listWit>
```

The nesting of witnesses in this way can lead to confusion, so it is a good idea to include comments to help with navigation:

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="ω">
  <abbr type="siglum">ω</abbr> = archetypus
     codicum αβ <listWit>
   <witness xml:id="a">
    <abbr type="siglum">α</abbr> =
         hyparchetypus codicum α<hi rend="subscript">1</hi>
         α<hi rend="subscript">2</hi>
    <listWit>
     <witness xml:id="α1">
      <abbr type="siglum">α<hi rend="subscript">1</hi></abbr> = hyparchetypus
             codicum MG <listWit>
       <witness xml:id="M">
        <abbr type="siglum">M</abbr>
<!-- Description of witness M -->
       </witness>
       <witness xml:id="G">
        <abbr type="siglum">G</abbr>
<!-- Description of witness G -->
       </witness>
      </listWit>
<!-- End of list of children of hyparchetype α1. -->
     </witness>
<!-- End of hyparchetype α1 -->
<!-- Start a new <witness> for α2 here, with <listWit> for any of its children. -->
    </listWit>
<!-- End of list of witnesses descending from hyparchetype α -->
   </witness>
<!-- End of hyparchetype α. This is where a description of β would begin. -->
  </listWit>
<!-- End of list of witnesses descending from ω. -->
 </witness>
<!-- End of witness ω, archetype of αβ. -->
</listWit>
<!-- End of the initial list. -->
```

4.5 Sources

The bibliography for early editions, modern editions, commentaries, translations, articles, notes, and other materials cited in the edition should be formatted according to the latest edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*. As noted elsewhere in these guidelines, it is recommended that editors use Zotero to manage the bibliography for LDLT editions, not least because Zotero can export the bibliography in Chicago style.

Items should be categorized and listed in groups for ease of reference. For example, previous editions should be listed separately from commentaries and articles. Depending on the nature of the material, it may be useful to subdivide previous editions into early and modern editions.

In keeping with the goal of human- and machine-readability, individual items in the bibliography should also be encoded in XML. To meet the **minimum requirement** for LDLT editions, individual items in the bibliography should be enclosed with <bibl> and they should have human- and machine-readable abbreviations (sigla), using <abbr> and *xml:id* respectively. See the section "Human- and Machine-Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations" for more information.

```
<listBibl>
 <head>Previous Editions</head>
 <bibl xml:id="Barth1613">
  <abbr type="siglum">Barth 1613</abbr> =
     Barthius, Casparus. Venatici et Bucolici Poetae Latini: Gratius,
     Nemesianus, Calpurnius. Hanoviae: In Bibliopolio Willieriano,
     1613.</bibl>
 <bibl xml:id="Ulit.">
  <abbr type="siglum">Ulit.</abbr> = Ulitius, Ianus.
     Venatio Novantiqua. Leidae: Ex Officina Elzeveriana, 1645.</bibl>
</listBibl>
```

For maximum functionality, it is strongly recommended to encode a greater degree of bibliographical detail, using the following:

- <editor> or <author>

- <title>

- <pubPlace> (place of publication)

- <publisher>

- <date>

- <ptr> (pointer, for the URL of a digital copy, if available)

The following sections demonstrate the recommended encoding for common types of records in a bibliography.

4.5.1   Editions

To make the most of the functionality supported by the LDLT and to remain true to its data model, previous editions should be classified in one of two categories: early editions based on a single manuscript (witness), and modern critical editions based on more than one external source (source). This will have consequences for how the editions are handled in the apparatus criticus (see the section "Apparatus Criticus"). The distinction should be preserved in the bibliography with the use of two different kinds of lists: <listWit> for early editions, and <listBibl> for modern editions. In both types of list, the items should be presented in chronological order.

For more information on the terms "witness" and "source" as they are used here, see the section "Terminology: Witness and Source" above.

Early Editions

Since it is often the case that an early edition is a witness to a single manuscript, early editions should be encoded in the bibliography with <witness>. Accordingly, they must be grouped in <listWit>. Since they are also printed books, they also require the use of <bibl> and its related elements.

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically.

\<witness\> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil.

\<abbr\> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

\<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

\<editor\> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

\<title\> contains a title for any kind of work.

\<pubPlace\> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

\<publisher\> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

\<date\> contains a date in any format.

\<ptr\> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

- \<listWit\> (list of witnesses) contains bibliographical records for early editions.

- \<witness\> groups the information about an individual edition. *xml:id* provides the machine-readable abbreviation for the edition.

- \<abbr\> (abbreviation) with *type*="siglum" contains the human-readable abbreviation for the record, i.e., how the edition is referred to in the apparatus criticus.

- \<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains the following bibliographical information about the edition:

  - \<editor\> contains the name of the editor in the form "Last name, First name," if known. If the name is in Latin, it should not be translated. If the name is not known, \<editor\> contains the word "Anonymous."

  - \<title\> contains either the name by which the edition is commonly known (e.g., *editio Romana*, *editio Aldina*) and/or the actual title of the edition.

  - \<pubPlace\> (place of publication) contains the name of the place where the edition was published, as it appears on the title page (e.g., Lipsiae instead of Leipzig). If the place is unknown, the value should be "s.l." (*sine loco*). If the place is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the place name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<publisher\> contains the name of the publisher, as it appears on the title page. If the publisher's name is unknown, the value should be "s.n." (*sine nomine*). If the publisher is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the publisher's name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<date\> contains the date in arabic numerals (e.g., 1504, not MDIV or CIƆIƆIV). If the date is unknown, the value should be "s.d." (*sine die*). If the date is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the date should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<ptr\> (pointer) has *target* with the URL of a digital copy of the edition, if one exists.

```
<listWit xml:id="early-editions">
 <head>Early Editions</head>
 <witness xml:id="r">
  <abbr type="siglum">r</abbr> =
  <bibl>
```

```
   <editor>
    <name>Anonymous</name>
   </editor>.
   <title>editio Romana</title>.
   <pubPlace>[Romae]</pubPlace>: <publisher>Schweynheim
          et Pannartz</publisher>,
   <date>1471</date></bibl>.</witness>
 <witness xml:id="e">
  <abbr type="siglum">e</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <editor>
    <name>Anonymous</name>.
    </editor>
   <title>editio Veneta</title>.
   <pubPlace>[Venetiis]</pubPlace>: <publisher>Ausonius
          et Giradinus</publisher>,
   <date>1472</date></bibl>.</witness>
 <witness xml:id="u">
  <abbr type="siglum">u</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>editio Ang.
          Ugoleti</title>. <pubPlace>Parmae</pubPlace>:
   <publisher>Angelus Ugoletus</publisher>,
   <date>1492</date></bibl>.</witness>
 <witness xml:id="c">
  <abbr type="siglum">c</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>editio
          Coloniensis (Buccolica canori poetae Titi Calphurnii
          Siculi undecim Aeglogis iucunditer
          decantata)</title>. <pubPlace>Coloniae</pubPlace>:
   <publisher>[Henricus Quintell]</publisher>,
   <date>1505(?)</date></bibl>. URL: <ptr target="http://digitale.bibliothek.uni-halle.de/vd16/co
<witness xml:id="Nordh.">
  <abbr type="siglum">Nordh.</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <editor/>. <title>ed. Nordheimensis</title>.
   <pubPlace>[Nordheim]</pubPlace>:
   <publisher>s.n.</publisher>,
   <date>s.d.</date></bibl>.</witness>
 <witness xml:id="s">
  <abbr type="siglum">s</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <title>editio Ascensiana</title> =
   <editor>Badius, Josse ("Ascensius")</editor>.
   <title>Buccolica, cum adnotatione
          Ascensiana</title>. <pubPlace>Parhisiis, in vico
          Maturinorum</pubPlace>: <publisher>a Durando
          Gerlerio</publisher>, <date>1503</date></bibl>. URL:
  <ptr target="http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k841539v"/>.</witness>
 <witness xml:id="b">
  <abbr type="siglum">b</abbr> =
  <bibl>
   <title>editio Bononiensis</title> =
   <editor>Guidalottus Bononiensis, Diomedes</editor>.
   <title>Calpurnii et Nemesiani Poetarum Buccolicum
          Carmen</title>. <pubPlace>Bononiae</pubPlace>:
   <publisher>per Caligulam Bazalerium</publisher>,
   <date>1504</date></bibl>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=B1RrV7ciP6gC&pg=
</listWit>
```

Modern Editions

The bibliography for modern editions follows the same pattern as that for early editions, except <listBibl> is used instead of <listWit>.

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work.

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

<date> contains a date in any format.

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

- <listBibl> (citation lists) contains bibliographical records for modern editions.

- <bibl> (bibliographic citation) has *xml:id* with the machine-readable abbreviation for the edition. It contains the following bibliographical information about the edition:

  - <abbr> (abbreviation) contains the human-readable abbreviation for the record, i.e., how the edition is referred to in the apparatus criticus.

  - <editor> contains the name of the editor in the form "Last name, First name," if known. If the name is in Latin, it should not be translated. If the name is not known, <editor> contains the word "Anonymous."

  - <title> contains either the name by which the edition is commonly known (e.g., editio Romana, editio Aldina) and/or the actual title of the edition.

  - <pubPlace> (place of publication) contains the name of the place where the edition was published, as it appears on the title page (e.g., Lipsiae instead of Leipzig). If the place is unknown, the value should be "s.l." (*sine loco*). If the place is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the place name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - <publisher> contains the name of the publisher, as it appears on the title page. If the publisher's name is unknown, the value should be "s.n." (*sine nomine*). If the publisher is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the publisher's name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - <date> contains the date in arabic numerals (e.g., 1504, not MDIV or CIƆIƆIV). If the date is unknown, the value should be "s.d." (*sine die*). If the date is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the date should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - <ptr> (pointer) has *target* with the URL of a digital copy of the edition, if one exists.

```
<listBibl xml:id="modern-editions">
 <head>Modern Editions</head>
 <bibl xml:id="n">
  <abbr type="siglum">n</abbr> =
  <editor>Brassicanus, Johannes Alexander</editor>.
  <title>editio Brassicani</title>. <pubPlace>Argentorati
```

```
      (Strasbourg)</pubPlace>: <publisher>Iohannis
      Knoblochus</publisher>, <date>1519</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/book
<bibl xml:id="Vienn.">
 <abbr type="siglum">Vienn.</abbr> =
 <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>ed.
      Viennensis</title>. <pubPlace>s.l.</pubPlace>,
 <date>s.d.</date></bibl>
<bibl xml:id="g">
 <abbr type="siglum">g</abbr> = <editor>Logus,
      Georgius</editor>. <title>editio Augustana</title>.
 <pubPlace>Augustae Vindelicorum</pubPlace>:
 <publisher>in officina Henrici Steyner</publisher>),
 <date>1534</date>. URL: <ptr target="http://daten.digitale-sammlungen.de/~db/0003/bsb00038602/i
<bibl xml:id="Tig.">
 <abbr type="siglum">Tig.</abbr> =
 <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>editio
      Tigurina</title>
 <pubPlace>Tiguri</pubPlace>: <pubPlace>apud Christophorum
      Froschouerum</pubPlace>, <date>1537</date>. URL: <ptr target="http://reader.digitale-samml
<bibl xml:id="Gryph.">
 <abbr type="siglum">Gryph.</abbr> =
 <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>editio Gryph.</title>
 <pubPlace>Lugduni</pubPlace>: <publisher>apud Seb.
      Gyrphium</publisher>, <date>1537</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?
<bibl xml:id="o">
 <abbr type="siglum">o</abbr> =
 <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>ed.
      Oporiniana</title>
 <pubPlace>Basileae</pubPlace>: <publisher>Johannes
      Oporinus</publisher>, <date>1546</date>.URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?i
<bibl xml:id="p">
 <abbr type="siglum">p</abbr> = <title>ed.
      Pithoeana</title> = <editor>Pithoeus, Petrus</editor>.
 <title>Epigrammata et poematia vetera</title>.
 <pubPlace>Parisiis</pubPlace>: <publisher>Dionysius
      Duvallius</publisher>, <date>1590</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books
<bibl xml:id="edAurel">
 <abbr type="siglum">Aurel.</abbr> =
 <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>Corpus omnium veterum
      poetarum latinorum (Volumen Secundum)</title>.
 <pubPlace>Aureliae Allobrogum</pubPlace>:
 <publisher>Samuel Crispinus</publisher>,
 <date>1611</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=Q-EPAAAAQAAJ&pg=PP5#v=on
<bibl xml:id="Barth1613">
 <abbr type="siglum">Barth 1613</abbr> =
 <title>ed. Barthii</title> = <editor>Barthius,
      Casparus</editor>. <title>Venatici et Bucolici Poetae
      Latini: Gratius, Nemesianus, Calpurnius</title>.
 <pubPlace>Hanoviae</pubPlace>: <publisher>In Bibliopolio
      Willieriano</publisher>, <date>1613</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/boo
<bibl xml:id="Ulit.">
 <abbr type="siglum">Ulit.</abbr> =
 <title>ed. Ulitii</title> = <editor>Ulitius,
      Ianus</editor>. <title>Venatio Novantiqua</title>.
 <pubPlace>Leidae</pubPlace>: <publisher>Ex Officina
      Elzeveriana</publisher>, <date>1645</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/boo
<bibl xml:id="h">
 <abbr type="siglum">h</abbr> = ed. Haverkampi
    et Brucii = <editor>Anonymous</editor>. <title>Poetae Latini
      Rei Venaticae Scriptores et Bucolici Antiqui</title>.
 <pubPlace>Lugduni Batavorum et Hagae Comitum</pubPlace>:
    apud Johannem Arnoldum Langerak, P. Gosse, et J. Neaulme;
```

```
      Rutg. Christoph. Alberts, J. Vander Kloot,
  <date>1728</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=nJVAAAAAcAAJ&pg=PP9#v=on
 <bibl xml:id="Burm1731">
  <abbr type="siglum">Burm. 1731</abbr> =
  <title>editio Burmanni</title> = <editor>Burmannus,
       Petrus (Pieter Burman)</editor>. <title>Poetae Latini
       Minores, Tom. I</title>. <pubPlace>Leidae</pubPlace>:
  <publisher>apud Conradum Wishoff et Danielem
       Goedval</publisher>, <date>1731</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?i
 <bibl xml:id="t">
  <abbr type="siglum">t</abbr> = <title>ed.
       Mitaviensis</title> = <editor>Anonymous</editor>.
  <title>M. Aurelii Olympii Nemesiani Eclogae IV et T.
       Calpurnii Siculi Eclogae VII ad Nemesianum
       Carthaginiensem, cum notis selectis Titii, Martelli,
       Ulitii, et Petri Burmanni integris.</title>
  <pubPlace>Mitaviae</pubPlace>: <publisher>apud Jacob.
       Frider. Hinzium</publisher>, <date>1774</date>. URL:
  <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=eNUpAAAAYAAJ&pg=PP11#v=onepage&q&f=false"/>.</bi
 <bibl xml:id="Wernsd.">
  <abbr type="siglum">Wernsd.</abbr> =
  <title>ed. Wernsdorfii</title> = <editor>Wernsdorf,
       Iohannes Christianus.</editor>
  <title>Poetae Latini Minores, Tomus Primus</title>.
  <pubPlace>Altenburgi</pubPlace>: <pubPlace>ex officina
       Richteria</pubPlace>, <date>1780</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?
 <bibl xml:id="Beck">
  <abbr type="siglum">Beck</abbr> =
  <editor>Beck, Christian Daniel</editor>. <title>T.
       Calpurnii Siculi Eclogae XI</title>.
  <pubPlace>Lipsiae</pubPlace>: <publisher>in libraria
       Weidmannia</publisher>, <date>1803</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/book
 <bibl xml:id="Glaeser">
  <abbr type="siglum">Glaeser</abbr> =
  <editor>Glaeser, C. E.</editor>
  <title>T. Calpurnii Siculi Eclogae</title>.
  <pubPlace>Gottingae</pubPlace>: <publisher>sumptibus
       Dieterichianis</publisher>, <date>1842</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/
 <bibl xml:id="Baehr.">
  <abbr type="siglum">Baehr.</abbr> = ed.
     Baehrensii = <editor>Baehrens, Aemilius</editor>.
  <title>Poetae Latini Minores, Volumen III</title>.
  <pubPlace>Lipsiae</pubPlace>: <publisher>in aedibus B.
       G. Teubneri</publisher>, 1881. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=CjUOAAA
 <listBibl xml:id="Schenkl">
  <head>utriusque edition. Schenkl. consensus</head>
  <bibl xml:id="Schenkl1">
   <abbr type="siglum">Schenkl<hi rend="super">1</hi></abbr> = <editor>Schenkl,
         Henricus</editor>. <title>Calpurnii et Nemesiani
         Bucolica</title>. <pubPlace>Lipsiae</pubPlace>:
       sumptus fecit G. Freytag, <date>1885</date>. URL <ptr target="https://books.google.com/boo
  <bibl xml:id="Schenkl2">
   <abbr type="siglum">Schenkl<hi rend="super">2</hi></abbr> = <editor>Schenkl,
         Henricus</editor>. <title>T. Calpurni Siculi
         Bucolica</title> in <ref target="Postgate1905">Postgate 1905</ref>: 197-
205. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=_DMOAAAAYAAJ&pg=RA1-PA194#v=onepage&q&f=
 </listBibl>
 <bibl xml:id="Keene">
  <abbr type="siglum">Keene</abbr> =
  <editor>Keene, Charles Haines</editor>. <title>The
       Eclogues of Calpurnius Siculus and M. Aurelius Olympius
       Nemesianus</title>. <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>:
```

```
   <publisher>Bell</publisher>, 1887. URL: <ptr target="https://archive.org/details/ecloguesofcalp
 <bibl xml:id="Giarratano">
  <abbr type="siglum">Giarratano</abbr>
     = <editor>Giarratano, Caesar</editor>. <title>Calpurnii et
       Nemesiani Bucolica</title>.
  <pubPlace>Neapoli</pubPlace>: apud Detken et Rocholl,
  <date>1910</date>.</bibl>
</listBibl>
```

If it is necessary to group two or more editions together (e.g., first and second editions) and refer to them as a unit with one siglum, another <listBibl> should enclose the group:

```
<listBibl>
 <head>Modern Editions</head>
 <listBibl xml:id="i">
  <head>
   <abbr type="siglum">i</abbr> = utriusque ed. Florent.
       consensus</head>
  <bibl xml:id="i1">
   <abbr type="siglum">i<hi rend="super">1</hi></abbr> = <editor>Anonymous</editor>.
   <title>editio Florentina prior</title>.
   <pubPlace>Florentiae</pubPlace>: <publisher>Philippi
        de Giunta</publisher>, <date>1504</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/bod
  <bibl xml:id="i2">
   <abbr type="siglum">i<hi rend="super">2</hi></abbr> = <editor>Anonymous</editor>.
   <title>editio Florentina posterior</title> = Titius,
       Robertus. <title>M. Aurelii Olympii Nemesiani
          Carthaginiensis, T. Calphurnii Siculi
          Bucolica</title>. <pubPlace>Florentiae</pubPlace>:
   <publisher>apud Philippum Iunctam</publisher>,
   <date>1590</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=9SEvnoZgKe4C&pg=PR1#v=o
 </listBibl>
 <listBibl xml:id="l">
  <head>
   <abbr type="siglum">l</abbr> = utriusque ed. Ald.
       consensus</head>
  <bibl xml:id="l1">
   <abbr type="siglum">l<hi rend="super">1</hi></abbr> = <editor>Anonymous</editor>.
   <title>editio Aldina prior</title>.
   <pubPlace>Venetiis</pubPlace>: <publisher>in aedibus
        Aldi, et Andreae Soceri</publisher>
   <date>1518</date>. URL: <ptr target="http://gateway.proquest.com/openurl?url_ver=Z39.88-2004&r
  <bibl xml:id="l2">
   <abbr type="siglum">l<hi rend="super">2</hi></abbr> = <editor>Anonymous</editor>.
   <title>editio Aldina posterior</title>.
   <pubPlace>Venetiis</pubPlace>: <publisher>in aedibus
        heredum Aldi Manutii, et Andreae Soceri</publisher>,
   <date>1519</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=EYg6AAAAcAAJ&pg=PA1#v=o
 </listBibl>
</listBibl>
```

4.5.2 Other Sources

Bibliographical information for items other than editions should be gathered in a general bibliography (using <listBibl>), formatted according to the most recent edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*, and presented in alphabetical order.

The following sections provide instructions for encoding different types of resources commonly found in the bibliographies of critical editions.

Books

The following information about books, commentaries, monographs, collections of essays, etc., should be encoded:

\<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

\<abbr\> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

\<author\> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

\<editor\> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

\<title\> contains a title for any kind of work.

\<pubPlace\> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

\<publisher\> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

\<date\> contains a date in any format.

\<ptr\> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

- \<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) has *xml:id* with the machine-readable abbreviation for the book. It contains the following bibliographical information about the book:

  - \<abbr\> (abbreviation) contains the human-readable abbreviation for the record, i.e., how the book is referred to in the apparatus criticus.

  - \<author\> contains the name of the author in the form "Last name, First name," if known. If the name is in Latin, it should not be translated. If the name is not known, \<author\> should contain the word "Anonymous."

  - \<title\> contains either the name by which the edition is commonly known (e.g., *editio Romana*, *editio Aldina*) and/or the actual title of the edition.

  - \<pubPlace\> (place of publication) contains the name of the place where the edition was published, as it appears on the title page (e.g., Lipsiae instead of Leipzig). If the place is unknown, the value should be "s.l." (*sine loco*). If the place is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the place name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<publisher\> contains the name of the publisher, as it appears on the title page. If the publisher's name is unknown, the value should be "s.n." (*sine nomine*). If the publisher is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the publisher's name should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<date\> contains the date in arabic numerals (e.g., 1504, not MDIV or CIƆIƆIV). If the date is unknown, the value should be "s.d." (*sine die*). If the date is known, but not explicitly printed in the edition, the date should be enclosed in square brackets.

  - \<ptr\> (pointer) has *target* with the URL of a digital copy of the edition, if one exists.

```
<bibl xml:id="Haupt1854">
 <abbr type="siglum">Haupt 1854</abbr>.
 <author>Haupt, Moriz</author>. <title>De Carminibus
     Bucolicis Calpurnii et Nemesiani</title>.
 <pubPlace>Berolini</pubPlace>: <publisher>Typis
     Academicis</publisher>, <date>1854</date>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?
```

This will be rendered as follows: **Haupt 1854** = Haupt, Moriz. *De Carminibus Bucolicis Calpurnii et Neme-siani*. Berolini: Typis Academics, 1854. URL: https://books.google.com/books?id=8SwUAAAAQAAJ&pg=PP5#v=one...

Articles

As with other items in the bibliography, articles in journals and periodicals should be formatted according to the latest edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style*. The minimum required encoding for articles is as follows:

```
<bibl xml:id="Lucas">
 <abbr type="siglum">Lucas</abbr> = Lucas, Hans.
   "Zu Calpurnius." Wiener Studien 22 (1901): 139-40. URL:
   https://books.google.com/books?id=gbmMVZEcoGMC&pg=PA139#v=onepage&q&f=false.</bibl>
```

It is strongly recommended to encode more details:

\<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

\<abbr\> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

\<author\> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

\<title\> contains a title for any kind of work.

\<date\> contains a date in any format.

\<ptr\> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location.

- <bibl> (bibliographic citation) has *xml:id* with the machine-readable abbreviation for the book. It contains the following bibliographical information about the book:

  - <abbr> (abbreviation) contains the human-readable abbreviation for the record, i.e., how the article is referred to in the apparatus criticus.

  - <author> contains the name of the author in the form "Last name, First name."

  - <title> with *level*="a" contains the title of the article. Quotation marks for the title should be outside of <title> (e.g., "<title>Article Title</title>", not <title>"Article Title"</title>).

  - <title> with *level*="j" contains the title of the journal or periodical.

  - <biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) is used with *unit* to indicate details of publication:

    * *unit*="volume" contains the volume number of the journal in which the article has been published.
    * *unit*="page" contains the inclusive pages where the article may be found.

  - <date> contains the year of publication.

  - <ptr> with *target* provide the URL of a digital copy of the article, if available.

```
<bibl xml:id="Lucas">
 <abbr type="siglum">Lucas</abbr> =
 <author>Lucas, Hans</author>. "<title level="a">Zu
     Calpurnius</title>." <title level="j">Wiener Studien</title>
 <biblScope unit="volume">22</biblScope> (<date>1901</date>):
 <biblScope unit="page">139-40</biblScope>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.com/books?id=g
```

Reviews   A review of an edition or other work should be handled in the same way as a journal article, with the exception that the title should begin with the words "Review of" followed by the title of the work being reviewed.

```
<bibl xml:id="Jacoby">
 <abbr type="siglum">Jacoby</abbr> =
 <author>Jacoby, Karl</author>. <title level="a">Review
     of 'Calpurnii et Nemesiani Bucolica recensuit Henricus
     Schenkl, Lipsiae, G. Freytag, Pragae, F. Tempsky,
     1885'</title>. <title level="j">Wochenschrift für
     klassische Philologie</title>
 <biblScope unit="volume">3</biblScope> (<date>1886</date>):
 <biblScope unit="page">1287-94</biblScope>. URL: <ptr target="https://books.google.de/books?id=q
```

4.5.3   List of Scholars

Occasionally it is necessary to refer to a scholar whose unpublished work has been quoted or paraphrased elsewhere. For example, editors often cite Heinsius' unpublished conjectures, found in books in his own library. But "Heins." does not help a reader find more information, which is why the bibliography of an LDLT edition must include a list of scholars mentioned by name in the edition, with information about where to find more information, if it is available.

\<listPerson\>   (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

\<person\>   provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

\<abbr\>   (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

\<persName\>   (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

\<forename\>   contains a forename, given or baptismal name.

\<surname\>   contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.
UNKNOWN ELEMENT addname

\<ref\>   (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

\<note\>   contains a note or annotation.

- \<listPerson\> with *xml:id*="bibliography-scholars" groups the information identifying the scholars.

- \<person\> groups information about an individual. It has a machine-readable siglum in *xml:id* as described in the section "Human- and Machine-Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations."

- \<persName\> (personal name) groups the information about an individuals's name. For identification purposes, it is helpful, but not required, to use *ref* with the Virtual International Authorify File (VIAF) permalink for that person. The following information is contained by \<persName\>

    - \<abbr\> with *type*="siglum" contains the name or abbreviated name used to refer to the person in the edition (e.g., Heins.), as described in the section "Human- and Machine-Readable Sigla, Symbols, and Abbreviations."

    - \<forename\> contains the scholar's first and middle names (middle name optional), or initials, of the scholar. A separate \<forename\> should be used for the first and middle names.

    - \<surname\> contains the scholar's last name.

- <addname> (additional name) contains an additional or alternate name by which a scholar is known. If a scholar is commonly known by a Latinized form of his or her name, that name should be inserted in <addname>.

- <note> contains further information about the nature of the citation (e.g., "personal correspondence with editor"), with <ref> (reference) containing a reference to the entry in the bibliography that has citations of the scholar. *target* with the xml:id of that entry will point the reader to that entry.

```
<person xml:id="Heins.">
 <persName ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/24651364">
  <abbr type="siglum">Heins.</abbr> =
  <forename>Nicolaus</forename>
  <surname>Heinsius</surname></persName>
 <note>Cited in <ref target="#Burm1731">Burman 1731</ref>.</note>
</person>
```

References such as this will be rendered in digital media and in print as follows:**Scholars Cited in this Edition**

- **Heins.** = Nicolaus Heinsius. Cited in Burman 1731.

5 Edition Text

The edition text corresponds to the text printed "above the line" of the critical apparatus in a traditional edition. It is composed of lemmata, that is, text judged by the editor to be authentic, accurate, and/or authoritative.

There may be more than one authoritative version of a text, depending on the text and/or the approach adopted by the editor. Authors sometimes edit and revise their work over time. Scribes often record the version of the text that makes sense in their context. Scholars and other readers offer conjectures for problematic passages. But an editor must make decisions about the text an edition presents to readers. Those decisions are part of the editor's argument about the text, and they are on display in the official edition text in its initial state.

"Initial state" is an important phrase. Since the digital version of an LDLT allows readers to swap readings from the critical apparatus into the main text, it is possible to encounter many versions of the text in one viewing of it, but the official edition text in its default initial state (i.e., what is displayed when the edition is opened for the first time, with default settings) is the starting point for those interactions.

This section establishes guidelines for encoding the information typically found in the edition text.

5.1 Prose

The aim of this section is to provide guidance for marking up the structure of prose texts, using the generic model of book, chapter, and paragraph for the main components of a work. Individual texts may have different structures, so editors should consult with LDLT staff about the best way to encode the structure.

In a traditional critical edition, numbers are printed in the margin and/or in the text itself. It is not always clear whether the numbers are meant to mark syntactic units, reflect the numbering of pages or sections in a canonical edition, or signify something else entirely. An advantage to semantically encoding the reference scheme is that it makes the scheme's significance explicit. For that reason, a human- and machine-readable reference scheme is essential for an LDLT edition. If the structure is not encoded according to these guidelines, search and browse functionality will not be supported.

5.1.1 Prose: Structure of the Work

For an LDLT edition of a prose text, the top-level <div> has the *type* "edition"; this division contains the entire text of the edition. The next <div> will normally have the *type* "textpart" with *subtype* "book" and *n* to indicate the number of the book.

```
<div type="edition">
 <div type="textpart" subtype="book" n="1">
<!-- Text goes here. -->
 </div>
</div>
```

If a different division scheme is required, editors should consult LDLT staff.

5.1.2 Prose: Structure of Paragraphs

The individual sections of a prose work should be encoded as follows:

<milestone> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element.

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level.

- <milestone> may be used to mark the sections of a canonical edition, if the current edition uses a different scheme.

- <p> (paragraph) contains the text of a chapter or other basic section in a prose work. *n* must be used to reflect the numbering scheme of the edition. Note that the TEI Guidelines define the paragraph as 'the fundamental organizational unit for all prose texts'. The unique characteristics of some texts may require a different approach. In those cases, editors should work with LDLT staff to identify the best way to encode the text in question.

- <seg> (segment) contains a segment of a paragraph (e.g., a sentence or a more general "section"). If <seg> is used, *n* must be used to reflect the numbering scheme of the edition.

```
<div type="edition">
 <div type="textpart" subtype="book" n="1">
  <p n="1">
   <seg n="1">Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum
        unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui
        ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.</seg>
   <seg n="2">Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se
        differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis
        Matrona et Sequana dividit.</seg>
   <seg n="3">Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea
        quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime
        absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque
        ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important,
        proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt,
        quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.</seg>
   <seg n="4">Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos
        virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum
        Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent
        aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt.</seg>
   <seg n="5">Eorum una, pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est,
        initium capit a flumine Rhodano, continetur Garumna
        flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum, attingit etiam ab
        Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, vergit ad
        septentriones.</seg>
   <seg n="6">Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur,
        pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant
        in septentrionem et orientem solem.</seg>
   <seg n="7">Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes
```

```
          et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet;
          spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.</seg>
   </p>
  </div>
</div>
```

That text will be rendered as follows:

Liber I

1 [1]Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. [2]Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. [3]Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important, proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. [4]Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. [5]Eorum una, pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano, continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum, attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum, vergit ad septentriones. [6]Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. [7]Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

5.2 Verse

The verse module of the TEI Guidelines offers many possibilities for marking up various aspects of prosody, but the LDLT is primarily concerned with the core tags for encoding the structure of verse texts. This does not mean that editors and others should avoid using the verse module. It means only that the LDLT does not provide functionality for any markup not described here.

5.2.1 Verse: Structure of the Collection

For an LDLT edition of a verse text, the top-level <div> has the *type* "edition"; this division contains the entire text of the edition. The next <div> will normally have the *type* "textpart" with *subtype* "book" and *n* to indicate the number of the book. <div> with *type*="poem" contains the parts of a single poem (e.g., stanzas or lines). If there is more than one poem in a book, *n* should be used to number the poems. *met* with the name of the meter may also be used, if the editor wishes to identify the meter. If a different division scheme is required, editors should consult LDLT staff.

```
<div type="edition">
 <div type="textpart" subtype="book">
  <div type="poem" n="1"
   met="First Asclepiadean">
<!-- Text of poem goes here -->
  </div>
 </div>
</div>
```

5.2.2 Verse: Structure of a Poem

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

- <lg> (line group) groups one or more verse lines that form a stanza or a couplet; *type* may be used to identify the grouping (e.g., "stanza" or "couplet").

- <l> (line) contains the text of a single line of verse, with *n* and the number of the line.

```
<div type="book" n="2">
 <div type="poem" n="1" met="Alcaic Strophe">
  <lg type="stanza">
   <l n="1">Motum ex Metello consule civicum</l>
   <l n="2">bellique causas et vitia et modos</l>
   <l n="3">ludumque Fortunae gravisque</l>
   <l n="4">principum amicitias et arma</l>
  </lg>
 </div>
</div>
```

5.3 Text in Languages Other than Latin

If text in languages other than Latin is encoded, language becomes available as a criterion for searching and filtering.

\<foreign\> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

- <foreign> contains text in any language other than Latin.

- *xml:lang* identifies the language by ISO 639-2 code.

For example, authors of Latin texts often use Greek words and phrases, as Macrobius does at *Saturnalia 1.17.64*: 'Ἀπόλλωνα Διδυμαῖον vocant, quod geminam speciem sui niminis praefert ipse inluminando formandoque lunam'. That should be encoded as follows:

```
<p>
 <foreign xml:lang="grc">Ἀπόλλωνα Διδυμαῖον</foreign> vocant, quod geminam
   speciem sui numinis praefert ipse inluminando formandoque lunam.</p>
```

5.4 Speech

This section discusses how to encode the following kinds of speech:

- direct speech

- dialogue in a play or other setting

5.4.1 Direct Speech

Quotation of direct speech may be handled in two ways: with punctuation alone or with semantic markup.

If an editor wishes to use standard punctuation to represent direct speech, the current edition of *The Chicago Manual of Style* should be the guide.

The following rules apply to the semantic markup of direct speech:

\<said\> (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters.

<said> (speech) contains text spoken by real people or fictional characters.

who identifies the speaker (optional). Values for *who* should be recorded elsewhere (e.g., preface, appendix) in a <list> with *type*="speakers". They can also be incorporated into <listPerson> as described below in the section "People."

For example, Julius Caesar's famous words before crossing the Rubicon, as reported by Suetonius, should be encoded as follows:

```
<p>tunc Caesar, <said who="#Caesar">eatur,</said> inquit, <said who="#Caesar">quo
deorum ostenta et inimicorum iniquitas uocat:
     iacta alea esto.</said></p>
```

<said> may be nested inside <said> to indicate quotation within a quotation.

5.4.2 Dialogue

In texts with interlocutors, the label for a speaker is a "paratext," or aid to the reader; it is not, strictly speaking, part of the text itself. For that reason, these guidelines treat labels for speakers as metadata associated with the point in the text where a character begins to speak. For example, the first line of Vergil's *Eclogues* is spoken by the character Corydon, but "Corydon" or "C" is not part of the text of the first line. Otherwise, the line would not scan properly as dactylic hexameter.

Texts that feature interlocutors (e.g., drama, dialogue) should use one of the following methods to indicate a change in speaker.

Labels

Labels are the simplest way of indicating a change of speakers, since they do not add a new layer of hierachy to the markup.

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary.

<label> with *type*="speaker" may be used as a simple way of indicating a change of speaker in verse and prose texts.

```
<p>
 <label type="speaker">Laelius</label>Atqui, Cato, gratissimum
   nobis, ut etiam pro Scipione pollicear, feceris, si, quoniam
   speramus, volumus quidem certe, senes fieri, multo ante a te
   didicerimus quibus facillime rationibus ingravescentem aetatem
   ferre possimus.</p>
<p>
 <label type="speaker">Cato</label>Faciam vero, Laeli, praesertim
   si utrique vestrum, ut dicis, gratum futurum est.</p>
```

```
<l n="1">
 <label type="speaker">C.</label>Nondum Solis equos declinis
   mitigat aestas,</l>
<l n="2">quamvis et madidis incumbant prela racemis</l>
<l n="3">et spument rauco ferventia musta susurro.</l>
<l n="4">cernis ut ecce pater quas tradidit, Ornyte, vaccae</l>
<l n="5">molle sub hirsuta latus explicuere genista?</l>
<l n="6">nos quoque vicinis cur non succedimus umbris?</l>
<l n="7">torrida cur solo defendimus ora galero?</l>
```

Since <label> is treated as metadata and thus ignored as part of the actual text, it will be omitted from searches of the text itself.

Because <label> is less hierarchical than <sp> (below), it is a good choice if there is dispute in the sources about the attribution of lines to speakers. If used with *exclude*, it can enable the swapping of variants, to allow readers to see the text with alternate attributions.

```
<l n="1">
 <label type="speaker">
  <app>
   <lem wit="#G #P #A #φ"
```

```
        source="#Ulit. #Wernsd. #Glaeser" xml:id="lem1.01-label-C"
        exclude="#rdg1.04-label-C">C.</lem>
      <rdg wit="#N #π #χ" source="#p"
      xml:id="rdg1.01-label-omit"/>
      <rdg wit="#ε #β #γ #μ #ρ"
      xml:id="rdg1.01-label-O">O.</rdg>
    </app>
  </label>Nondum Solis equos declinis mitigat
    aestas,</l>
<l n="2">quamvis et madidis incumbant prela racemis</l>
<l n="3">et spument rauco ferventia musta susurro.</l>
<l n="4">
  <app>
    <lem/>
    <rdg wit="#V" exclude="#lem1.01-label-C"
    xml:id="rdg1.04-label-C">
      <label type="speaker">C.</label>
    </rdg>
  </app>cernis ut ecce pater quas tradidit, Ornyte, vaccae</l>
<l n="5">molle sub hirsuta latus explicuere genista?</l>
<l n="6">nos quoque vicinis cur non succedimus umbris?</l>
<l n="7">torrida cur solo defendimus ora galero?</l>
```

In this example, the first line is attributed to Corydon, but some manuscripts and editions omit the label, and others attribute the lines to Ornytus. One family of manuscripts, **V**, attributes the fourth line to Corydon. *exclude* has been used here to indicate that whenever the <lem> in line 1.1 is displayed, the variant reading in line 1.4 will not be displayed, since that would be a contradiction. Since the variant in line 1.4 does not contradict the variants in line 1.1, there is no need to use *exclude* in those cases.

Note also the placement of <label> in the example above: in the first line, <label> is outside of <app> because the editor of the text is asserting that a label belongs there, but he is also indicating that there is disagreement in the sources about the contents of the label; in the fourth line, the editor asserts that a label does not belong on that line, but he also indicates that a variant reading inserts a label there.

Semantic Markup of Speakers

If it is desirable to mark the beginning and ending points of a character's speech, <sp> and <speaker> may be used.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

- <sp> (speech) groups elements related to a person or character's speech.

- *who* is used with <sp> to identify the speaker.

- <speaker> contains a human-readable label identifying the person or character speaking the text.

These features can be used in verse and prose texts:

```
<sp who="Corydon">
  <speaker>C.</speaker>
  <l n="1">Nondum Solis equos declinis mitigat aestas,</l>
  <l n="2">quamvis et madidis incumbant prela racemis</l>
  <l n="3">et spument rauco ferventia musta susurro.</l>
  <l n="4">cernis ut ecce pater quas tradidit, Ornyte, vaccae</l>
  <l n="5">molle sub hirsuta latus explicuere genista?</l>
```

```
 <l n="6">nos quoque vicinis cur non succedimus umbris?</l>
 <l n="7">torrida cur solo defendimus ora galero?</l>
</sp>
```

```
<sp who="Laelius">
 <speaker>Laelius</speaker>
 <p>Atqui, Cato, gratissimum nobis, ut etiam pro Scipione
     pollicear, feceris, si, quoniam speramus, volumus quidem
     certe, senes fieri, multo ante a te didicerimus quibus
     facillime rationibus ingravescentem aetatem ferre
     possimus.</p>
</sp>
<sp who="Cato">
 <speaker>Cato</speaker>
 <p>Faciam vero, Laeli, praesertim si utrique vestrum, ut dicis,
     gratum futurum est.</p>
</sp>
```

The hierarchy involved in this method makes it impossible to enable the swapping of variant attributions. At most, <app> can be used to indicate where variant attributions are found.

```
<sp who="Corydon">
 <speaker>
  <app>
   <lem wit="#G #P #A #φ"
    source="#Ulit. #Wernsd. #Glaeser">C.</lem>
   <rdg wit="#N #π #χ"/>
   <rdg wit="#ε #β #γ #μ #ρ">O.</rdg>
  </app>
 </speaker>
 <l n="1">Nondum Solis equos declinis mitigat aestas,</l>
 <l n="2">quamvis et madidis incumbant prela racemis</l>
 <l n="3">et spument rauco ferventia musta susurro.</l>
 <l n="4">
  <app>
   <lem/>
   <rdg wit="#V" exclude="#lem1.01-label-C"
    xml:id="rdg1.04-label-C">
    <label type="speaker">C.</label>
   </rdg>
  </app>cernis ut ecce pater quas tradidit, Ornyte, vaccae</l>
 <l n="5">molle sub hirsuta latus explicuere genista?</l>
 <l n="6">nos quoque vicinis cur non succedimus umbris?</l>
 <l n="7">torrida cur solo defendimus ora galero?</l>
</sp>
```

In this example, lines 1–7 are attributed to Corydon. An entry in the critical apparatus for line 1 will indicated that some manuscripts omit the label, but others attribute the lines to Ornytus. The critical apparatus for line 4 will show that the manuscripts in the family known as **V** indicate a change in speaker to Corydon.

5.5   Quotation of Literature

Quotations of literature should be encoded according to the guidelines set forth in the section "Apparatus Fontium."

5.6 People

It can be useful to encode names of people mentioned in the text of an edition, whether to facilitate the creation of an index or to support digital search functionality. It is up to the editor to decide which names, if any, should be encoded. If names are to be encoded, the following guidelines should be observed.

(list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

(personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

- <listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of names of people mentioned in the text. It is placed in the <back> section of the edition.

- <person> is an item in <listPerson> in the <back> section of the edition. Each <person> contains the nominative form of the name of an individual person (or deity, monster, etc.) mentioned in the text. It must also have *xml:id* with a machine-readable version of the name to serve as a reference for instances of the name in the text.

- <persName> contains the name of each person as it appears in the edition text, regardless of case.

- <org> (organization) is an item in <listPerson> in <back> section of the edition. Each <org> contains the nominative form of the name of a group of people such as a tribe, a nation, a company, etc., mentioned in the text. It must also have *xml:id* with a machine-readable version of the name to serve as a reference for instances of the name in the text.

- <orgName> (organization name) contains the name of each group of people as it appears in the edition text, regardless of case. It also has *ref* and the canonical Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) for the group of people at Pleiades.

- <note> contains further identifying information about the person (e.g., dates, the ID number in a reference work or prosopography), if the name is not enough to make the distinction.

Since inflected forms of names may appear in the text, it is vital to have a reference list of names in the nominative form. While working on a text, editors should establish a working list of names, in a separate XML document, using <listPerson>, <person> and <persName> or <org> and <orgName>:

```xml
<listPerson>
 <person xml:id="Absyrtus">
  <persName>Absyrtus</persName>
  <note>Medeae frater</note>
 </person>
 <person xml:id="Accius">
  <persName>Accius</persName>
  <note>Poeta</note>
 </person>
 <person xml:id="Actaeon">
  <persName>Actaeon</persName>
 </person>
 <org xml:id="Aedui">
  <orgName>Aedui</orgName>
 </org>
</listPerson>
```

   Where names of people in the reference list appear in the edition text, they should be encoded with
<persName> or <orgName> and *ref* pointing to the *xml:id* of the person in the <listPerson>.

```
<l n="6">constat ab <persName ref="#Absyrtus">Absyrti</persName> caede
   fuisse loco.</l>
```

   It is also possible to encode indirect references to people:

```
<l n="9">conscia percussit meritorum pectora <persName ref="#Medea">Colchis</persName></l>
```

   If there are variant readings of a name, <persName> should enclose the <app> with the lemma and
variant reading(s):

```
<persName ref="#Faunus">
 <app>
  <lem>Fauni</lem>
  <rdg wit="#P">fanni</rdg>
 </app>
</persName>
```

   This will cause the lemma and the variant(s) to be identified as names.
   But if it is clear that the nature of the variation is such that the lemma is a proper name, but the variant
is a common noun (or vice versa), <persName> should enclose only the proper noun inside of <lem> or
<rdg>.

```
<app>
 <lem>
  <persName ref="#Meliboeus">Meliboeus</persName>
 </lem>
 <rdg wit="#χ #φ">
  <persName ref="#Meliboeus">melibaeus</persName>
 </rdg>
 <rdg wit="#μ">me libens</rdg>
</app>
```

5.7   Places

Names of places can be encoded in LDLT editions to facilitate creation of an index or to assist readers
in identifying the places mentioned in the text. If it is desirable to encode this information, the following
guidelines should be followed.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships
      (other than containment) defined amongst them.

<place> contains data about a geographic location

<placeName> contains an absolute or relative place name.

- <listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of names of places mentioned in the text. It is placed in
  the <back> section of the edition.

- <place> is an item in <listPlace> in the <back> section of the edition. It must *xml:id* with a
  machine-readable version of the name to serve as a reference for instances of the name in the text.
  It may also have *corresp* with the canonical Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) for it at Pleiades or
  some other standard source of URIs for place names.

- <placeName> contains the nominative form of the name of a place.

Since inflected forms of place names may appear in the text, it can be helpful to provide a reference list of names in the nominative form. While working on a text, editors should establish a working list of names, in a separate XML document, using <listPlace>, <place> and <placeName>.

```
<listPlace>
 <place xml:id="Gallia"
  corresp="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/993">
  <placeName>Gallia</placeName>
 </place>
 <place xml:id="Garumna"
  corresp="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/138369">
  <placeName>Garumna</placeName>
 </place>
 <place xml:id="Matrona"
  corresp="https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/109147">
  <placeName>Matrona</placeName>
 </place>
 <place xml:id="Sequana"
  corresp="https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/109341">
  <placeName>Sequana</placeName>
 </place>
</listPlace>
```

The final list can be incorporated into the <back> of the edition at a later stage.

The following example from Caesar's *de bello Gallico* demonstrates how to encode place names when a <listPlace> is maintained in the <back> of the edition:

```
<p>
 <placeName ref="#Gallia">Gallia</placeName> est omnis divisa in partes
   tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum
   lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis,
   legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis <placeName ref="#Garumna">Garumna</placeName>
flumen, a Belgis <placeName ref="#Matrona">Matrona</placeName> et
<placeName ref="#Sequana">Sequana</placeName> dividit.</p>
```

It is also possible to forgo <listPlace> and just encode place names as they occur. This may be desirable in texts with only a few references to place names. In this case, it is recommended to include *ref* with each <placeName>, with a URI pointing to some reference (e.g., Pleiades) for the place name:

```
<p>
 <placeName ref="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/993">Gallia</placeName>
   est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam
   Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.
   Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab
   Aquitanis <placeName ref="http://pleiades.stoa.org/places/138369">Garumna</placeName>
flumen, a Belgis <placeName ref="https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/109147">Matrona</placeName>
et
 <placeName ref="https://pleiades.stoa.org/places/109341">Sequana</placeName>
dividit.</p>
```

5.8   Symbols Commonly Used in the Text of a Critical Edition

Over time, certain typographical conventions have become standard for representing emendations, lacunae, omissions, gaps, editorial deletions, and other information in the edition text. The present guidelines observe the standards as described by West (80–81), but they call for semantically encoding

them instead of simply inserting the various punctuation marks and other symbols that represent complex information. The encoding will produce the standard symbols, and the information they represent will be explicit and in a form readable by humans and machines. That means that it will also be available for processing, querying, and analyzing with digital tools.

Since most of the standard symbols usually have corresponding annotations in the critical apparatus, the encoding guidelines for many of them can be found in subsections of the guidelines for encoding entries in the critical apparatus. The following list identifies the symbols and points to the guidelines for encoding them:

- ( ) = expansion of an abbreviation.

- ạḅc̣ḍ = text uncertainly restored.

- < > = text added by conjecture or emendation.

- *** = lacuna in the textual tradition as a whole.

- < *** > = conjectured lacuna.

  ... = known amount of characters lost.

  — = illegible characters, quantity unknown.

- ⟦ ⟧ = deletion by a scribe in a witness.

- { } = editorial deletion.

- † † = text deemed by the editor to be readable but not understandable, with no satisfactory alternatives.

5.8.1   Expansion of Abbreviation

( ) = An editor expands an abbreviation as an aid to reading or to remove ambiguity. Encoded according to the following guidelines, a digital edition will display the abbreviated forms by default, but a user will be able to toggle between the abbreviated and expanded forms.

The preface should indicate whether or not abbreviations are expanded.

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

<ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation.

- <expan> (expansion) contains the full expansion of an abbreviation.

- <abbr> (abbreviation) contains the abbreviated part, i.e. the letters actually on the page.

- <ex> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation.

Example: M(arcus) Cicero S(alutem) D(ixit) L(ucio) Lucceio Q(uinti) F(ilio)

```
<p>
 <expan>
  <abbr>M</abbr>
  <ex>arcus</ex>
 </expan> Cicero
 <expan>
  <abbr>S</abbr>
```

```
  <ex>alutem</ex>
  <abbr>D</abbr>
  <ex>ixit</ex>
 </expan>
 <expan>
  <abbr>L</abbr>
  <ex>ucio</ex>
 </expan> Lucceio
 <expan>
  <abbr>Q</abbr>
  <ex>uinti</ex>
 </expan>
 <expan>
  <abbr>F</abbr>
  <ex>ilio</ex>
 </expan></p>
```

Multiple <abbr> elements within a single <expan> compose a single abbreviation between them. For example, "e.g." is one abbreviation for the phrase "exempli gratia."

```
<expan>
 <abbr>e</abbr>
 <ex>xempli</ex>
 <abbr>g</abbr>
 <ex>ratia</ex>
</expan>
```

5.8.2   Ambiguous Characters

When an edition is based on a limited number of witnesses, it may be necessary to indicate that characters are difficult to read. The accepted way to do this is with dots underneath the uncertainly restored characters.

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

<unclear> contains characters, words, or phrases that cannot be transcribed with certainty.

For example, the entry for *Mensae* in Lindsay's edition of Festus (157M) has the following uncertainly deciphered text:

ame . . . a tenebat aram . . . .

In an LDLT edition, that should be encoded as follows:

```
<unclear>ame</unclear>
<gap reason="lost" quantity="3"
 unit="characters"/>
<unclear>a tenebat aram</unclear>
<gap reason="lost" quantity="10"
 unit="characters"/>
```

5.8.3   Lacunae

*** = An unknown amount of text has been lost from the entire textual tradition, whether because of physical loss or human error (e.g., *saut du même au même*).

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

- <gap> signifies that text is missing.

- *reason* with value "lost" indicates that the text has been lost from the entire tradition, not just one witness or family of witnesses.

For example, an undetermined amount of text is missing from all witnesses at the end of 3.8.4 of Julius Caesar's *de Bello Civili*. Cynthia Damon's OCT edition has the following in the main text: Custodiisque diligentius dispositis ipse grauissima hieme in nauibus excubans neque ullum laborem aut munus despiciens neque subsidium expectans si in Caesaris complexum uenire posset ***.

<gap> with *reason*="lost" is inserted into the main text to indicate the lacuna:

```
<p>Custodiisque diligentius dispositis ipse grauissima hieme in nauibus
   excubans neque ullum laborem aut munus despiciens neque subsidium
   expectans si in Caesaris complexum uenire posset <gap reason="lost"/></p>
```

If it is desirable to insert a comment on the lacuna in the apparatus criticus, <note> should be used as explained in the section Editorial Notes.

These guidelines also have provisions for cases where an editor suspects a lacuna in the text, but lacks physical evidence of damage to support the claim. See the section "Conjectured Lacunae" for more information.

If a single witness or family of witnesses has a gap in coverage of the text, but the rest of the tradition preserves the text, the symbol for a lacuna should not be used, but the gap in the witness(es) should be noted in the apparatus criticus. See the section "Gaps in Witnesses" for encoding instructions.

6 Apparatus Fontium

An apparatus fontium collects references to texts quoted or cited by the author(s) in the text of the edition. This section demonstrates how to encode such references so that they will be displayed appropriately in the text and so that bibliographical information about them will appear in the edition.

The basic form of the encoding for an entry in the apparatus fontium has much in common with the encoding for entries in the apparatus criticus, so reading the section on the apparatus criticus is recommended.

<app> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage.

<lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation.

<rdg> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

- <app> (apparatus entry) contains information about a quotation or a reference made by the author of a text.

- <lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of the citation.

- <rdg> (reading) contains a variant form of the citation, if one exists in another witness or source (see more on witnesses and sources in the section "Apparatus Criticus: Concepts and Definitions").

- <cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation (in <quote>) from a source external to the text, with accompanying information about that source (in <bibl> or <ref>).

- <quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributable to some agency external to the text.

- <bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains the bibliographical information supplied by the author.

- <ref> (reference) with *target* contains a reference to a bibliographical item defined elsewhere in the edition.

- <note> (note), with *type*="fontium" and *target* pointing to the *xml:id* of the <lem>, contains a standardized form of reference (using <bibl> or <ref>) provided by the editor. *This is the information that will appear in the apparatus fontium.*

Any text in <quote> will be displayed or printed in quotation marks on the same line as the rest of the text. Any text in <quote> with *rend*="blockquote" will be or printed on a new line and indented. In the latter case, prose and verse text within <quote> should be encoded according to the guidelines in the sections "Prose" and "Verse."

The choice to use <bibl> or <ref> to indicate the source in the <note> for the apparatus fontium depends on how the bibliography for the edition has been organized. If the text includes few quotations, the editor may wish to encode each source in the <note> with <bibl> and its associated elements (e.g., <author>, <title>).

```
<note type="fontium"
 target="#lem-12-boethius">
 <bibl>
  <author>Boethius</author>
  <title>De Trin.</title>
  <biblScope unit="part">c. 4</biblScope> (ed. R. Peiper 159; PL 64,
     1353C)</bibl>
</note>
```

If there are multiple quotations or references to specific texts, the editor may wish to establish a list of sources cited by the author (using <listBibl>, with a <bibl> and *xml:id* for each source), and use <ref> with *target* pointing to the *xml:id* of the source of the quotation.

```
<note type="fontium"
 target="#lem-12-boethius">
 <ref target="#boethius-de-trin">Boethius <hi rend="italic">De Trin.</hi> c.
     4 (ed. R. Peiper 159; PL 64, 1353C)</ref>
</note>
```

Either method accomplishes the same objective, but note that the use of <ref> requires <hi> with *rend*="italic" for displaying or printing the title in italic type. Otherwise, the choice depends on how often the editor wishes to type the full bibliographical entry.

Wherever the bibliographical information is encoded, editors are encouraged to use *ref* on <author> and <title> to point to an identifier of some sort (e.g., CTS URN). For example,

```
<bibl>
 <author ref="urn:cts:latinLit:phi0134">Ter.</author>
 <title ref="urn:cts:latinLit:phi0134.phi004">Ph.</title>
 <biblScope unit="line">390</biblScope>
</bibl>
```

Using *ref* in this way will enrich the edition's metadata and enable access to other resources. For more information about this use of *ref*, consult the LDLT staff.

As for the source of the quotation, the following two types of encoding for entries in the apparatus fontium depend on whether or not the author has identified the source of the quotation in the text.

6.1   Source Identified by the Author

When the author identifies a source in the text, <bibl> should be used to the extent that the author has provided bibliographical information. A standardized form of the bibliographical information should be inserted in a <note> with *type*="fontium".

In the following example, Duns Scotus has referred to a work by Boethius, but he has not quoted it directly: *Probatio minoris per Boethium De Trinitate: dicit quod septem praedicamenta non dicunt absolutas res, sed tantum respectus.* That should be encoded as follows:

```
<p>Probatio minoris per <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-12-boethius">
   <bibl>
    <author>Boethium</author>
    <title>De Trinitate</title>
   </bibl>
  </lem>
  <note type="fontium"
   target="#lem-12-boethius">
   <bibl>
    <author>Boethius</author>
    <title>De Trin.</title>
    <biblScope unit="part">c. 4</biblScope> (ed. R. Peiper 159;
        PL 64, 1353C)</bibl>
  </note>
 </app>: dicit quod septem praedicamenta non dicunt absolutas res, sed
   tantum respectus.</p>
```

In the edition text, the text would be displayed or printed without interruption: Probatio minoris per Boethium *De Trinitate*: dicit quod septem praedicamenta non dicunt absolutas res, sed tantum respectus. The apparatus fontium would include the following entry: Boethius *De Trin.* c. 4 (ed. R. Peiper 159; PL 64, 1353C). If variant readings exist for the citation, they will appear in the apparatus criticus.

If it is desirable to provide the text of the reference in the apparatus fontium, it may be inserted in <quote> after <bibl> inside of the <note>:

```
<p>Probatio minoris per <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-12-boethius">
   <bibl>
    <author>Boethium</author>
    <title>De Trinitate</title>
   </bibl>
  </lem>
  <note type="fontium"
   target="#lem-12-boethius">
   <bibl>
    <author>Boethius</author>
    <title>De Trin.</title>
    <biblScope unit="part">c. 4</biblScope> (ed. R. Peiper 159;
        PL 64, 1353C)</bibl>
   <quote>Iamne patet quae sit differentia praedicationum? Quod
        aliae quidem quasi rem monstrant, aliae vero quasi
        circumstantias rei; quodque illa quae ita praedicantur, ut
        esse aliquid rem ostendant, illa vero ut non esse, sed
        potius extrinsecus aliquid quodam modo adfigant?</quote>
```

```
   </note>
 </app>: dicit quod septem praedicamenta non dicunt absolutas res, sed
   tantum respectus.</p>
```

The text of the quotation will be displayed in the apparatus fontium after the bibliographical information.

The following example from Robert Kaster's edition of *Macrobius' Saturnalia (3.16.1–5)* demonstrates a more complex entry that features other aspects of the quotation of sources, including direct speech, block quotations of prose and verse texts, and an inline quotation of a prose text:

```
<said who="#Rufius">
 <p>Nec acipenser, quem maria prodigis nutriunt, illius saeculi delicias
     evasit; et ut liqueat secundo Punico bello celebre nomen huius
     piscis fuisse, accipite ut meminerit eius <app>
   <lem xml:id="lem-3.16-plautus">
    <bibl>
     <author>Plautus</author> in
          fabula quae inscribitur <title>Baccaria</title></bibl>
        ex persona parasiti<cit>
     <quote rend="blockquote">
<!-- Verse quotation to be displayed/printed on new line and indented -->
      <l>quis est mortalis tanta fortuna adfectus
              umquam</l>
      <l>qua ego nunc sum, cuius haec ventri portatur
              pompa?</l>
      <l>vel nunc, qui mihi in mari acipenser latuit
              antehac,</l>
      <l>cuius ego latus in latebras reddam meis dentibus
              et manibus.</l>
     </quote>
    </cit></lem>
   <note type="fontium"
    target="#lem-3.16-plautus">
    <bibl>
     <author>Plautus</author>
     <title>Baccar.</title> 16-20</bibl>
   </note>
  </app>.</p>
 <p>et ne vilior sit testis poeta, accipite assertore Cicerone in quo
     honore fuerit hic piscis apud P. Scipionem Africanum illum et
     Numantinum, haec sunt in dialogo <app>
   <lem xml:id="lem-3.16-Cicero">
    <bibl>de fato verba <author>Ciceronis</author></bibl>
    <cit>
     <quote rend="blockquote">
<!-- Prose quotation to be displayed/printed on new line and indented -->
      <p>nam cum esset apud se ad Lavernium Scipio unaque
              Pontius adlatus est forte Scipioni acipenser, qui
              admodum raro capitur, sed est piscis, ut ferunt,
              in primis nobilis. cum autem Scipio unum et
              alterum ex his qui eum salutatum venerant
              invitavisset pluresque etiam invitaturus
              videretur, in aurem Pontius, <said who="#Pontius">Scipio,</said>
inquit, <said who="#Pontius">vide
              quid agas, acipenser iste paucorum hominum
              est.</said></p>
     </quote>
    </cit>
   </lem>
```

```
    <note type="fontium"
     target="#lem-3.16-Cicero">
     <bibl>
      <author>Cicero</author>
      <title>De Fato</title> fr. 4</bibl>
    </note>
   </app></p>
 <p>nec infitias eo temporibus Traiani hunc piscem in magno pretio non
     fuisse, teste <bibl>
   <author>Plinio Secundo</author>, qui in
   <title>Naturali historia</title></bibl> cum de hoc pisce
     loqueretur sic ait: <app>
   <lem>
    <cit>
<!-- Prose quotation to be displayed/printed in line -->
     <quote>nullo nunc in honore est, quod equidem miror, cum
             sit rarus inventu.</quote>
    </cit>
   </lem>
   <note type="fontium">
    <bibl>
     <author>Plin.</author>
     <title>HN</title> 9.60</bibl>.</note>
  </app></p>
</said>
```

6.2   Source Supplied by Editor

If the author has not identified the source of a direct or indirect quotation, the editor may supply it in the apparatus fontium.

For example, Cicero often mentions the name of the authors he quotes, but editors must supply more detailed citation information, as in this passage from *Orator 157*:

Quid quod sic loqui: nosse, iudicasse vetant, novisse iubent et iudicavisse? Quasi vero nesciamus in hoc genere et plenum verbum recte dici et imminutum usitate. Itaque utrumque Terentius:'eho tu, cognatum tuom non noras?'

post idem: 'Stilponem, inquam, noveras.'

Sient plenum est, sint imminutum; licet utare utroque.

To be sure that the citation information appears in the apparatus fontium, this is how that passage should be encoded:

```
<p>Quid quod sic loqui: nosse, iudicasse vetant, novisse iubent et
   iudicavisse? Quasi vero nesciamus in hoc genere et plenum verbum recte
   dici et imminutum usitate. Itaque utrumque <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-157-terence1">
   <bibl>
    <author>Terentius</author>
   </bibl>: <cit>
    <quote rend="blockquote">eho tu, cognatum tuom non
            noras?</quote>
   </cit></lem>
  <note type="fontium"
   target="#lem-157-terence1">
   <bibl>
    <author>Ter.</author>
    <title>Ph.</title>
    <biblScope unit="line">384</biblScope>
   </bibl>
  </note>
```

```
 </app></p>
<p>post idem <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-157-terence2">
   <cit>
    <quote rend="blockquote">Stilponem, inquam,
           noveras.</quote>
   </cit>
  </lem>
  <note type="fontium"
   target="#lem-157-terence2">
   <bibl>
    <author>Ter.</author>
    <title>Ph.</title>
    <biblScope unit="line">390</biblScope>
   </bibl>
  </note>
 </app>
  Sient plenum est, sint imminutum; licet utare utroque.</p>
```

7   Parallel Passages

A register of parallel passages differs from an apparatus fontium in that it reflects the editor's judgment about passages that might be of interest to readers, whereas an apparatus fontium provides information on passages quoted or cited by the author(s). For this reason, entries in the apparatus fontium are encoded within the edition text, but parallel passages are encoded as notes, similar to the way that an editor's textual notes are handled (see the section "Editorial Notes").

\<note\> contains a note or annotation.

\<listBibl\> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

\<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

\<author\> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority.

\<title\> contains a title for any kind of work.

\<biblScope\> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

\<quote\> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

- \<note\> contains a list of parallel passages related to the text. Each \<note\> must have an *xml:id* and *target* pointing to the *xml:id* related to the section of text referred to by the \<note\>. Each \<note\> must also have *type*="parallel" to distinguish it from other uses of \<note\>.

- \<listBibl\> (citation list) contains references to parallel passages.

- \<bibl\> (bibliographic citation) contains the following bibliographic information pertaining to an individual parallel passage.

-
  - \<author\> contains the name of the author (or a standard abbreviation) of a parallel passage.
  - \<title\> contains the title of the work (or a standard abbreviation) in which the parallel passage occurs.
  - \<biblScope\> (scope of bibliographic reference) contains the specific unit where the parallel passage may be found (e.g., book number, section number, paragraph number, line number, etc.).

- <quote> contains the quoted text of the passage, if desirable.

For example, Gelsomino includes an extensive list of parallel passages to individual entries in his edition of Vibius Sequester. If that edition were encoded according to these guidelines, each paragraph in the edition text would have an *xml:id* and *corresp* pointing to the *xml:id* of the note with the parallel passages:

```
<p n="1" xml:id="f1-achelous"
 corresp="p-f1-achelous">Achelous, Aetoliae, primus
   erupisse terram dicitur.</p>
<note type="parallel" target="#f1-achelous"
 xml:id="p-f1-achelous">
 <listBibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>Verg.</author>
   <title>G</title>
   <biblScope>1.9</biblScope>
  </bibl>: <quote>poculaque …
       Acheloia"</quote> (cf. <bibl>
   <author>Serv. Auct.</author> ad
       loc.</bibl>); <bibl>
   <author>Macr.</author>
   <title>Satur.</title>
   <biblScope>5.18.1-2</biblScope> praesertim 9</bibl></listBibl>
</note>
<p n="2" xml:id="f2-arar">Arar, <app>
  <lem>Germaniae</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Tschu. #Siml.">Galliae</rdg>
 </app>, e <app>
  <lem>Vogeso</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Sal." source="#Rie.">Vosego</rdg>
 </app> monte. miscetur Rhodano. ita lene decurrit, ut vix intellegi possit
   decursus eius.</p>
<note type="parallel" target="#f2-arar"
 xml:id="p-f2-arar">
 <listBibl>
  <bibl>
   <author>Verg.</author>
   <title>E</title>
   <biblScope>1.62</biblScope>
  </bibl>: <quote>aut Ararim Parthus bibet
       aut Germania Tigrim</quote>; (cf.
  <bibl>
   <author>Serv.</author>
  </bibl>: <quote>Ararim Germaniae flumen
       … Arar fluvius Galliae fluens in Rhodanum</quote>
  <bibl>
   <title>Schol. Bern.</title>
  </bibl>: <quote>Arar flumen Germaniae,
       tamen alii dicunt Galliae, in Rhodanum iens</quote>
  <bibl>
   <author>Phil.</author>
   <biblScope>II</biblScope>
  </bibl>: <quote>fluvius Germaniae vel
       Galliae</quote>
  <bibl>
   <author>Ansil.</author>
   <title>AR</title>
   <biblScope>35, 35, 36</biblScope>
  </bibl>: <quote>Fluvius
       Germaniae</quote>; cf. <bibl>
   <author>Caes.</author>
   <title>BG</title>
```

```
    <biblScope>1.12</biblScope>
  </bibl></listBibl>
</note>
```

8   Apparatus Criticus

This section provides models for handling the different kinds of entries that occur in an apparatus criticus. It uses the terminology, elements, and attributes of the TEI's module 12 Critical Apparatus, but it also defines terms and encoding methods specific to LDLT editions. This section is not an instructional manual for composing an apparatus criticus. Rather, it presents a model for semantically encoding the information to be included in the apparatus criticus of an LDLT edition.

In a digital context, critical editions encoded according to these guidelines will have certain interactive features:

- Readings from manuscripts and other sources can be filtered in or out of the text.

- Certain types of variant readings (e.g., orthographic variants, conjectures, corrections) can be removed from the apparatus criticus to reduce its size.

- A variant reading can be swapped into the text so that it can be viewed *in situ*.

- Line transpositions can be activated and viewed in the text.

In a printed version, critical editions encoded according to these guidelines can be styled to have an apparatus criticus in a format familiar from standard critical ediitons.

8.1   Concepts and Definitions

The apparatus criticus is where editors assemble the variant readings from witnesses and sources they believe to be important for establishing the text, occasionally adding brief comments, bibliographical citations, and palaeographical details. This section defines the terms used in these guidelines.

It is important to emphasize that a critical apparatus reflects an editor's judgment about what is and is not important for supporting the argument advanced by the edition. Accordingly, the amount of information included in the critical apparatus depends on the method and aims of the editor. Although these guidelines make it possible to include every reading from every possible source, editors should bear in mind that manuscript collations, notes, and other data can be made available to readers as ancillary materials associated with an LDLT edition. Editors should consult with LDLT staff and the editorial board regarding format and storage of ancillary materials.

8.1.1   Readings

A critical edition contains two types of **reading**: lemma and variant.

A **lemma** (pl. lemmata) is a word or phrase (or the absence thereof) judged by the editor to be authentic, accurate, and/or authoritative. It may be attested by documentary sources (e.g., a manuscript, an early edition) or it may be an emendation made by a scholar independently of a documentary source. The text printed in the main portion (i.e., edition text) of a critical edition is made up of lemmata.

A **variant** is a word or phrase (or absence thereof) judged by the editor to be unsatisfactory for linguistic and/or stylistic reasons, but of interest for establishing the text. This type of reading is a "variant" insofar as it varies from what the editor has judged to be the lemma. A variant reading may be attested by a manuscript or it may be a conjecture or the result of a correction. By default in LDLT editions, variant readings are displayed or printed in the apparatus criticus. In digital versions, variants can be swapped into the edition text in real time so that readers may judge the merits of variant readings for themselves.

An **emendation** is a reading expressly proposed by some person (possibly the editor) and accepted by the editor into the main text of an edition.

A **conjecture** is a reading expressly proposed by some person (possibly the editor) and determined by an editor to be of interest in establishing the text, but not to be printed in the main text of the edition.

This distinction between "emendation" and "conjecture" supports the goal of these guidelines of drawing attention to editions as arguments. The terms are used subjectively, with regard to a particular edition. Readers of an edition may agree or disagree about whether a particular reading emends the text, but the editor's argument is that a reading does emend the text. Therefore, it is called an emendation.

Correction describes any attempt by the original copyist or some other hand to alter a witness' reading, regardless of whether the result of the correction matches the lemma of the current edition. It is a matter of perspective whether the result of a correction is "correct." For more information, see the section "Correction".

Opinions can differ from editor to editor about what the "correct" reading is, which is why having more than one critical edition of a text is not necessarily redundant. Similarly, copyists and other users of manuscripts have their own idea of what the "correct" reading is. The original copyist might notice a slip of the pen in his own work and correct it. A later hand might correct a mistake missed by the copyist. Another reader comparing two manuscripts might "correct" one of them based on the other's reading. In these cases and others, the motivation is to correct what is perceived to be incorrect. For all of these reasons, "correction" is used in these guidelines to refer to an attempt to alter existing text so that it conforms to some perceived standard, whether or not that standard matches the editor's view of what the correct reading is.

The next two sections discuss where readings are found, i.e., in witnesses and sources.

8.1.2   Witnesses

A **witness** may be a manuscript, the individual hands that wrote in a manuscript, or an early printed edition (*editio princeps*) that may preserve the readings of a single manuscript.

The physical object referred to as a manuscript is not by itself a witness. Rather, it preserves a record of the activities of the copyist(s), rubricator(s), corrector(s), and/or other annotator(s) who wrote on its pages, each of whom might be a witness to a different exemplar. At the very least, they represent different perceptions of the same exemplar. By synecdoche, those people are referred to as "hands." (These hands are not to be confused with the drawings of hands, known as manicules, that sometimes appear in the margins of manuscripts to point out passages of interest.) A manuscript's hands are represented in a critical edition by superscript numerals appended to its siglum. A change in number, however, does not necessarily indicate a change of person. For example, the copyist and corrector might be one and the same person, but it can be important to distinguish them, since they represent different views and experiences of the text.

Confusion can arise from assigning numbers only to hands subsequent to the original copyist. That is, the siglum for the manuscript by itself (i.e., without a superscript numeral) is understood to represent both the physical object and the hand of the original copyist who wrote in it; every subsequent hand, including the original copyist correcting his own mistakes, is numbered in ascending order from "1". Strictly speaking, the original copyist is "hand zero," but adding a superscript zero to every siglum would be redundant, since it can be inferred from the absence of a numeral that the original copyist is meant.

In some cases, it is not necessary, possible, or desirable to make such a sharp distinction between hands. It may be sufficient instead to refer to hands other than the original copyist with the general *manus recentior*, or *m.r.* ("a later hand"). However the editor decides to represent the activities of a manuscript's hands and the relationships between them, an explanation must be provided in the preface.

For more information on representing the hands in manuscripts, see the sections "Manuscript Description" and "Sigla."

In sum, for the purposes of these guidelines, manuscript hands are witnesses, and the following scheme should be used to indicate them:

- siglum without a superscript number ("hand zero") = the original copyist.

- siglum with superscript 1 ("hand one") = the original copyist altering the text he originally wrote.

- siglum with superscript 2 ("hand two"): a hand that wrote at the same time or later than the original copyist.

- siglum with superscript letters "mr" (= manus recentior) some hand after the original copyist, if it is not possible and/or useful to identify securely the individual hands.

- etc.

Another acceptable approach is to append abbreviations such as "ac" and "pc" (*ante correctionem* and *post correctionem*) as superscript notations on the manuscript's siglum. It all depends on what suits the editor's purposes, provided that the method of distinguishing hands is explained in the description of manuscripts and both human- and machine-readable sigla are assigned to them.

If it is desirable to identify different copyists (e.g., if the manuscript was originally copied by more than one person), subscript notations should be used (e.g, A_1, A_2, A_3, etc.). Each copyist's hand must be described and assigned a human- and machine-readable siglum in the description of the manuscript.

8.1.3 Sources

A **source** may be any modern critical edition, commentary, article, review, or other item (e.g., personal correspondence) in which an argument about the text has been advanced or discussed.

8.1.4 Order

As in traditional printed editions, the order in which certain information is presented has meaning in LDLT editions, though the order's meaning is not itself explicitly encoded. Editors should follow the recommendations of West (87–88) on the issue of order. In brief:

- Readings are presented in the following order of precedence: direct manuscript tradition, indirect tradition, conjectures (in descending order of merit, as determined by the editor).

- Manuscripts should be given a regular order for citation, though editors may deviate from this practice for the sake of clarity.

8.2 Encoding Specifications for the Apparatus Criticus

The following attributes and elements are required for putting the concepts discussed above into practice:

\<app\> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage.

\<lem\> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation.

\<rdg\> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation.

\<wit\> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation.

\<witDetail\> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

\<note\> contains a note or annotation.

- \<app\> (apparatus entry) contains the lemma and readings for a single entry in the apparatus criticus. It is possible to nest one \<app\> and its contents inside of another \<app\>, if necessary.

- \<lem\> (lemma) contains a reading judged by the editor to be authentic, or as close as possible to it. This type of reading constitutes the text of the initial state (i.e., when first opened) of an LDLT edition's text. A lemma may be an absence of text, if the editor has reason to doubt the merit of the extant readings.

- \<rdg\> (reading) contains text (or absence of text) witnessed by a manuscript or found in an early printed edition (where it is not expressly proposed), but judged by the editor to be unsatisfactory or corrupt for linguistic and/or stylistic reasons. This text is initially in the apparatus criticus, but it may be swapped with the lemma in the LDLT viewer.

- *wit* (witness) contains machine-readable sigla for any manuscript(s) (or manuscript hands) or early printed edition(s) (esp. without an apparatus or commentary, so-called *editiones vetustiores*).

- *source* (source) contains machine-readable sigla for any printed edition(s) or other scholarly work(s) (e.g., article, textual note, commentary) addressing an aspect of the text.

- *ana* (analysis) classifies a reading as belonging to one or more categories in the LDLT's taxonomy of readings. More than one value is possible. See the section "Tagging Readings for Analysis." Use of *ana* enables the LDLT viewer's filtering functionality.

- <wit> contains general information about a reading or a group of witnesses.

- <witDetail> (witness detail) contains information about a particular witness (*wit*) to a lemma (<lem>) or reading (<rdg>). <witDetail> is especially important for reporting corrections.

- <note> (note) contains editorial comments, bibliographical references, or other information pertaining to the apparatus entry.

In traditional printed editions, the lemma may appear in the apparatus criticus for the purpose of disambiguation (e.g., if there are two instances of the word in the same line or if the degree of variance makes it difficult to infer the lemma), but more often the lemma must be inferred. This can lead to confusion and frustration, particularly for readers not used to navigating a critical edition. Moreover, variant readings are sequestered from the edition text and displayed at the bottom of the page, an arrangement that can lead to false impressions about the certainty and reliability of the edition text.

In the TEI's model for the critical apparatus, which is the basis for these guidelines, each entry includes the lemma and its variants. How that information is displayed or printed is a separate issue, but at least the relationship between the lemma and the variant readings is explicitly encoded. In digital representations of an edition encoded according to the guidelines presented here, readings may be swapped into or out of the edition text, but the editor's determination about what the lemma is and what the variant readings are remains encoded to preserve the argument the edition makes about the text. In this way, it is possible for readers to experience many versions of a text in addition to the edition's initial state (i.e., its default setting). The variety of readings depends on what the editor decides to encode, and it is expected that those decisions will be explained in the preface.

The patterns displayed below are designed to handle the various kinds of information conveyed in a typical apparatus criticus, including readings *ante correctionem* and *in rasura*, among other paleographical and editorial details.

8.3   Basic Reporting of a Variant Reading

The most basic type of entry in an apparatus criticus reports only a variant reading, without editorial comment or a description of palaeographical details. The pattern is as follows:

```
<p>Edition text, until there is a lemma that requires an entry in the
   apparatus. <app>
  <lem>
<!-- text of lemma goes here -->
  </lem>
  <rdg>
<!-- text of variant reading goes here -->
  </rdg>
 </app> Edition text resumes. </p>
```

In other words, <app> begins the apparatus entry, followed by <lem>, which contains the lemma for the entry. The lemma may be a single word or phrase or the omission of a word or phrase. The variant reading follows, contained in <rdg>. Only the contents of <lem> appear in the initial state of the edition text. The contents of <rdg> appear in the apparatus criticus.

If there is more than one variant reading to be reported, new <rdg> elements should be added for each one.

```
<app>
 <lem>
<!-- text of lemma goes here -->
 </lem>
 <rdg>
<!-- text of reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
 <rdg>
<!-- text of reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
</app>
```

It is up to the editor to decide whether to list the witnesses for the lemma. In many cases, it can be inferred that the lemma is supported by most of the evidence. All readings, however, should include witnesses or sources so that users will be able to track that information.

The attribute *wit* contains the witness(es) for the lemma and reading(s). A hash or pound sign (#) before the siglum for the witness indicates that the witness has been described elsewhere in the edition, making it possible to retrieve that information.

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#A">
<!-- text of lemma goes here -->
 </lem>
 <rdg wit="#B">
<!-- text of variant reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
 <rdg wit="#C">
<!-- text of variant reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
</app>
```

If there is more than one witness for a reading, the sigla should be values for *wit* separated by spaces.

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#A #B #C">
<!-- text of lemma goes here -->
 </lem>
 <rdg wit="#D #E #F">
<!-- text of reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
 <rdg wit="#G #H #I">
<!-- text of reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
</app>
```

If it is desirable to indicate that a reading is found in a manuscript and a modern edition or other source, the same pattern applies, with the addition of *source*.

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#A" source="#Alonso">
<!-- text of lemma goes here -->
 </lem>
 <rdg wit="#B #C"
  source="#Vettel #Grosjean">
<!-- text of reading goes here -->
 </rdg>
</app>
```

8.3.1 Examples of basic apparatus criticus entries

At Calpurnius (Calp.) 1.2 (*quamvis et madidis incumbant praela racemis*), the manuscript **P** has *praeda* where the lemma is *praela*. In a traditional apparatus criticus, this would be printed as follows: 2 praeda **P**.

The following pattern demonstrates how to encode the entry in according to these guidelines:

```
<l n="2">quamvis et madidis incumbant <app>
  <lem>praela</lem>
  <rdg wit="#P">praeda</rdg>
 </app> racemis</l>
```

This encoding can be rendered in the traditional manner, or it can be used in an interactive apparatus to swap the variant with the lemma in the main edition text.

The lemma *quamvis* in the same line demonstrates how to indicate that a variant has more than one witness:

```
<l n="2">
 <app>
  <lem>quamvis</lem>
  <rdg wit="#f #g #r #t">quatinus</rdg>
 </app> et madidis incumbant praela racemis</l>
```

The witnesses are listed here in chronological order, but an editor may wish to use a different ordering principle. The order should be described and explained in the preface.

The following example demonstrates how to encode a reading supported by a witness and a source.

```
<app>
 <lem>sequor</lem>
 <rdg wit="#N" source="#Glaeser">sequar</rdg>
</app>
```

8.4 Apparatus Entries That Cross Structural Boundaries

Most entries in an critical apparatus concern text within the boundaries of a structural unit such as a line of poetry or a section within a paragraph, but sometimes it is necessary for entries to cross those structural boundaries. This presents a problem for the hierarchical nature of XML, since a "child" element cannot overlap its "parent" element. Using *next* and *prev* can compensate for that issue.

For example, the witness **V** omits the final word of section 18.3 and all of section 18.4 from the *Bellum Alexandrinum*. In a print edition, it would be possible to write the following: enatauerunt … 18.4 fuit VI milium *om.* **V**, but in an LDLT edition, the <app> contained by <seg> 3 cannot extend into <seg> 4. It must be encoded using *next* and *prev* as follows:

```
<seg n="3"> … interuallum ad oppidum
<!-- @next points to the <app> in the next segment -->
 <app xml:id="app-18.3-enatauerunt"
  next="#app-18.4-multi">
  <lem>enatauerunt.</lem>
  <rdg wit="#V" ana="#subtractive"/>
 </app></seg>
<seg n="4">
<!-- @prev points to the <app> in the previous segment -->
 <app xml:id="app-18.4-multi"
  prev="#app-18.3-enatauerunt">
  <lem>Multi tamen ex his capti interfectique sunt; sed numerus
        captiuorum omnino fuit VI milium.</lem>
```

```
  <rdg wit="#V" ana="#subtractive"/>
 </app>
</seg>
```

This particular example could also be handled with <lacunaStart> and <lacunaEnd>, as described in the section "Gaps in Witnesses."

8.5   Variations on Readings in a Group of Witnesses/Sources

For the sake of keeping the emphasis on the grouping of witnesses or sources, it may be necessary to indicate that variations on a reading appear in the group, instead of reporting which witnesses or sources have the variations. In that case, a combination of <rdgGrp> (reading group) and <note> can be used.

<rdgGrp> (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

- <rdgGrp> (reading group) contains two or more readings (<rdg>) related to each other in some way.

- <note> contains language that connects the readings in <rdgGrp> (e.g., *an*, *aut*, or *vel*)

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#A">ante A. Gellium</lem>
 <rdgGrp>
  <rdg wit="#B #C #D #E">antea gellium</rdg>
  <note>vel</note>
  <rdg wit="#B #C #D #E">ante agellium</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

8.6   Use of Catch-all References in the Critical Apparatus

If it is desirable to use a consensus reference (e.g., ω, ς) or a catch-all reference (e.g., codd., mss., cett., edd.) the references must be defined in the bibliography of the edition according to the guidelines in the section "Catch-all References." This section demonstrates how to insert catch-all references into the apparatus.

If consensus or catch-all references are used without any additional annotation, they may be treated like any other witness or source (i.e., as values of *wit* or *source*), provided that they have both machine- and human-readable sigla.

If they are annotated (e.g., edd. ante Glaeser), they must be encoded in <wit> according to the guidelines below.

<wit> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation.

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

- <wit> contains a catch-all reference to a group of manuscripts, editions, or other materials.

- <ref> contains machine- and human-readable references to an item in the bibliography.

In the following example, the editor wishes to show that the editions are divided, with one in particular (Glaeser) marking a definitive shift in preference.

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#N #P">vicit</lem>
 <wit>
  <ref target="#Glaeser">Glaeser</ref> sqq.</wit>
 <rdg wit="#G">vīcit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#d">ludit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#V">lusit</rdg>
 <wit>edd. ante <ref target="#Glaeser">Glaeser</ref></wit>
 <rdg wit="#µ">visit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#γ"/>
</app>
```

This may be displayed or printed as vicit] N P Glaeser sqq. : vīcit G : ludit d : lusit V edd. ante Glaeser : visit µ : om. γ.

8.7 Omission

Omission is different from a lacuna, which is the absence of an unknown or uncertain quantity of text from the tradition in general. This section explains how to encode omission of known quantities of text from a particular witness or witnesses. Three kinds of omission are discussed here:

- omission of a letter or letters, words, phrases, or lines in a witness or family of witnesses

- omission of a known or estimated quantity of letters

- a substantial gap in a witness or family of witnesses

.

Related sections:

- Lacuna

- Conjectured Lacuna

- Deletions

8.7.1 Omission of a Letter or Letters, Words, Phrases, or Lines

Witnesses and sources sometimes omit items from the text. This section describes how to encode those omissions.

For example, the witness known as **P** omitted the word *pecus* from Calp. 1.38: *securo custode pecus nocturnaque pastor*. The traditional apparatus criticus indicates the omission as follows: pecus *om.* **P**

In these guidelines, omission is represented by a so-called "self-closing" or empty <rdg> (i.e., <rdg />):

```
<l>securo custode <app>
  <lem>pecus</lem>
  <rdg wit="#P"/>
 </app> nocturnaque pastor</l>
```

The same model applies to the omission of an entire line of verse by a witness or witnesses, but in that case <app> has *type*="line-omission" and <lem> contains the entire line, with the omission marked by a self-closing <rdg>:

```
<app type="line-omission">
 <lem>
  <l n="3">et spument rauco ferventia musta susurro.</l>
 </lem>
 <rdg wit="#n #h"/>
</app>
```

This will be displayed in the apparatus criticus as '*vers. om.* **n h**'

8.7.2   Known Amount Of Characters Lost

[. . .] = The editor knows from context and/or observation how many characters have been lost. Each dot represents a missing character.

<gap> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

- <gap> signifies text is missing.

- *reason* with value "lost" indicates that the text has been lost.

- *quantity* indicates the number of characters lost.

- *unit* with value "characters" indicates the unit measured in *quantity*.

For example, in the apparatus criticus to Calp. 4.4, Giarratano has the following with reference to lemma *spiritus amnis*: 'sp$\overline{c}$ N (deinde lac. 6 litt.)'.
In an LDLT edition, that would be encoded as follows:

```
<l n="4">ripa levatque diem vicini <app>
  <lem>spiritus amnis</lem>
  <rdg wit="#N">spc¯ <gap reason="lost" quantity="6"
    unit="characters"/></rdg>
 </app>? </l>
```

That encoding would produce the following entry in the apparatus: 'sp$\overline{c}$ [......]'. If it is desirable to supplement that with a note, the <rdg> should be given an *xml:id* and the note should be inserted in a <witDetail> pointing to it:

```
<l n="4">ripa levatque diem vicini <app>
  <lem>spiritus amnis</lem>
  <rdg wit="#N"
   xml:id="rdg-4.4-spiritus-amnis">spc¯
   <gap reason="lost" quantity="6"
    unit="characters"/></rdg>
  <witDetail wit="#N"
   target="#rdg-4.4-spiritus-amnis">lac. 6
       litt.</witDetail>
 </app>? </l>
```

8.8   Gaps in Witnesses

<lacunaStart> indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete textual witness.

<lacunaEnd> indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness.

If a witness or family of witnesses has a gap in coverage of the text, for whatever reason, the gap may be noted in the apparatus criticus using <lacunaStart> and <lacunaEnd>.

The use of the term "lacuna" here is likely to cause confusion. The TEI Guidelines (12.1.5 Fragmentary Witnesses) use the term "lacuna" in the elements <lacunaStart> and <lacunaEnd>, which are used here to indicate a gap in a witness or group of witnesses. If the gap occurs in the entire tradition, the section "Lacunae" in these guidelines should be followed.

For example, sections 1.1–1.33.3 of Julius Caesar's *de Bello Civili* are missing from manuscript **M**. Cynthia Damon's OCT edition has the following in the critical apparatus: 1.1.1–1.33.3 *M deest, vice eius m citatur*.

In an LDLT edition, that should be encoded as follows:

```
<app>
 <lem>Litteris</lem>
 <rdg wit="#M" xml:id="M-lacuna-1.1">
  <lacunaStart/>
 </rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#M" target="#M-lacuna-1.1">1.1.1-1.33.3 M deest, vice
     eius m citatur.</witDetail>
</app>
```

At 1.33.3, Damon's apparatus criticus has: '-duum *hinc adest M*'. In an LDLT edition, that should be encoded as follows:

```
<p>Sic tri<app>
  <lem>duum</lem>
  <rdg wit="#M"
   xml:id="rdg-1.33.3-lacunaEnd">
   <lacunaEnd/>
  </rdg>
  <witDetail wit="#M"
   target="#rdg-1.33.3-lacunaEnd">hinc adest
       M</witDetail>
 </app> disputationibus …</p>
```

8.9   Fragmentary Witnesses

<witStart> (fragmented witness start) indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

<witEnd> (fragmented witness end) indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness.

The presence of fragmentary witnesses should be noted in the apparatus criticus using <witStart> and <witEnd>.

For example, the fragmentary witnesses known collectively as "Exc. Par." (= Thuaneus 7647 and Nostradamensis 17903) in Giarratano's edition of Calpurnius Siculus have 5.12–13. Giarratano notes this fact in the apparatus criticus as follows: *12 et sq. habent Exc. Par.*. In an LDLT edition, this should be noted in an <app> as follows:

```
<l n="12">
 <app>
  <lem>aspicis</lem>
  <rdg wit="#ExcPar">
   <witStart/>
  </rdg>
 </app> ut nobis aetas iam mille querelas</l>
```

```
<l n="13">afferat et baculum premat inclinata <app>
  <lem>senectus</lem>
  <rdg wit="#ExcPar">
   <witEnd/>
  </rdg>
 </app>?</l>
```

<rdg> with *wit* and the value of the witness' machine-readable siglum (*xml:id*) encloses <witStart> or <witEnd> to show where the witness begins and ends. <witDetail> may be used to describe the presence of witnesses.

8.10   Addition of Text in a Witness

This section demonstrates how to indicate that text has been added to a witness. There are two methods for encoding additions: prose description and semantic markup. Both are described in this section. The same information is presented in both cases, but the semantic markup version supports additional functionality such as querying and filtering on readings added in the margin or elsewhere.

For additions made by the editor of the current edition or a previous editor, see the section "Editorial Additions and Deletions."

8.10.1   Addition: Prose Description

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

<witDetail> (witness detail) contains a prose description of the addition.

For example, the copyist of manuscript **G** has the lemma *certare*, but a later hand has added the variant reading *certate* in the margin.

89 certare] certate $\mathbf{G}^1$ *in mg.*

The prose description method uses <witDetail> to describe the addition:

```
<app>
 <lem>certare</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G1" xml:id="rdg-certate">certate</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G1" target="#rdg-certate">(add. in mg.)</witDetail>
</app>
```

8.10.2   Addition: Semantic Markup

The semantic markup method uses <add> to encode the addition:

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

- <add> (addition) contains text that has been added.

- *place* indicates the placed where the text has been added. Possible values:

    - **above**: above the line (*suprascr.* = *superscriptum/a*)

    - **below**: below the line (*subscr.* = *subscriptum/a*)

    - **bottom**: bottom of the page (*in mg. inf..* = *in margine inferiore*

    - **inline**: within the body of the original text (*in textu*)

    - **inRas**: in the space where text has been erased. (*in ras.* = *in rasura*)

    - **margin**: right, left, or both (*in mg.* = *in margine*)

    - **top**: at the top of the page (*in mg. sup.* = *in margine superiore*)

```
<app>
 <lem>certare</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G1">
  <add place="margin">certate</add>
 </rdg>
</app>
```

8.11   Deletion in a Witness

The following guidelines demonstrate how to produce a notation about the deletion of text from a witness by a scribe, along with the method of deletion (if known).

For deletions made by the editor of the current edition or a previous editor, see the section "Editorial Additions and Deletions."

Deletion almost always occurs as part of a correction. In that case, this section should be used in combination with the guidelines in the section "Correction." The examples in this section represent deletion as part of a correction.

There are two methods for encoding deletions: prose description and semantic markup. Both are described in the following subsections. The same information is presented in both cases, but the semantic markup version will support additional functionality such as querying and filtering on deleted readings and the method of deletion.

8.11.1   Deletion: Prose Description

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

<witDetail> (witness detail) contains a prose description of the deletion.

The prose description method uses <witDetail> to describe the deletion:

```
<app>
 <lem>amotae</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G" xml:id="rdg-adamote">adamote</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G" target="#rdg-adamote"
  type="correction-original"/>
 <rdg wit="#G1" xml:id="rdg-amote">amote</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G1" target="#rdg-amote"
  type="correction-altered">ad <hi rend="italic">exp.</hi></witDetail>
</app>
```

The output of this encoding would be amotae] adamote **G** (a.c.), amote **G**^{1} (ad *exp.*)

8.11.2   Deletion: Semantic Markup

The semantic markup method uses <del> to encode the deletion. Deletions encoded according to these guidelines will be displayed or printed enclosed in double brackets: ⟦ ⟧ .

<del> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector.

- <del> (deletion) contains text that has been deleted.

- *rend* (rendition) indicates the method of deletion. Use of *rend* is optional. Without it, the generic notation *del.* for *delevit* or *delevi* will be inserted. Otherwise, *rend* with one of the following values will generate a more specific notation:

  - **erasure**: text has been erased or scraped off of the page, but it is possible to detect what was deleted (*ante ras.*).

— **expunction**: dots have been written under a word to indicate that it should be deleted (*exp.*).

```
<app>
 <lem>amotae</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G" xml:id="rdg-adamote">adamote</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G" target="#rdg-adamote"
  type="correction-original"/>
 <rdg wit="#G1" xml:id="rdg-amote">
  <del rend="expunction">ad</del>amote</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G1" target="#rdg-amote"
  type="correction-altered">ad <hi rend="italic">exp.</hi></witDetail>
</app>
```

The output of this encoding would be amotae] adamote **G** (*a.c.*), □ ad□ amote **G**^{1} (*p.c.*, ad *exp.*)

8.11.3 Illegible Characters, Quantity Unknown

It is occasionally necessary to indicate the presence of illegible characters in a witness' text.

\<gap\> indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible.

UNKNOWN ELEMENT reason

\<extent\> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units.

UNKNOWN ELEMENT unit

For example, at Calp. 6.4, the lemma is *dedit*, but the witness known as **N** has *deo* and some illegible characters after it. Giarratano has indicated the presence of illegible characters with an asterisk: *deo **. These guidelines use dashes to indicate illegible characters, but the attributes *reason*, *extent*, and *unit* provide more information.

```
<app>
 <lem>dedit</lem>
 <rdg wit="#N">
  <gap reason="illegible" extent="unknown"
   unit="character"/>
 </rdg>
</app>
```

8.11.4 Transpositions

Transpositions may be handled in two ways: prose description or semantic markup. Prose description produces a note in the apparatus criticus. Semantic encoding produces a note in the apparatus criticus, but it will also enable readers to swap the transpositions in and out of the text in a digital version.

The sections below demonstrate the prose description and semantic markup methods for the following examples:

Example 1: In the Teubner edition of Ovid's *Tristia*, J.B. Hall follows the recommendation of Wilamowitz and transposes lines 41–42 of poem 3.12 so that they follow line 36. In the apparatus criticus, Hall writes '**41–42** *post 36 transposuit Wilamowitz.*'

Example 2: In Richard Tarrant's OCT of Ovid's *Metamorphoses*, the text of 1.304–305 is as follows:
nat lupus inter oues, fuluos uehit unda leones,
unda uehit tigres; nec uires fulminis apro

In the apparatus criticus, Tarrant notes the following: 304–5 fuluos … tigres *om HM*^{ac}(*N*^{ac}); *habet Bern, sed ordine turbato* (nat … oues nec uires f. apro | unda u. tigres, fuluos … leones)

Transposition: Prose Description

To describe this transposition in the apparatus criticus, <app> encloses the affected passage, and <witDetail> or <note> contains the description.

Example 1 (Ov. *Tr.* 3.12.36ff.)

```
<l n="35">ille quidem mirum ni de regione propinqua</l>
<l n="36">non nisi uicinas tutus ararit aquas.</l>
<app>
 <lem xml:id="lem-3.12.41-42">
  <l n="41">fas quoque ab ore freti longaeque Propontidos
      undis</l>
  <l n="42">huc aliquem certo uela dedisse Noto.</l>
 </lem>
 <note target="#lem-3.12.41-42">41-42 post 36 transposuit <ref target="#Wilamowitz">Wilamowitz</r
</app>
<l n="37">rarus ab Italia tantum mare nauita transit,</l>
<l n="38">litora rarus in haec portubus orba uenit.</l>
```

Example 2 (Ov. *Met.*, 1.304–305):

```
<app>
 <lem xml:id="lem-1.304-305">
  <l n="304">nat lupus inter oues, fuluos uehit unda
      leones,</l>
  <l n="305">unda uehit tigres; nec uires fulminis apro</l>
 </lem>
 <note target="#lem-1.304-305"> fuluos … tigres <hi rend="italic">om</hi>.
<ref target="#H">H</ref>
  <ref target="#Mac">M<hi rend="superscript">ac</hi></ref>(<ref target="#Nac">N<hi rend="superscr
 <note target="#lem-1.304-305">304-5 <hi rend="italic">habet <ref target="#Bern">Bern</ref>,
sed ordine turbato</hi>
      (nat … oues nec uires f. apro | unda u. tigres, fuluos …
      leones)</note>
</app>
```

Neither one of these examples would support the functionality of swapping the transpositions in and out of the main text of the edition. Instead, readers would just see a note in the apparatus criticus describing the transposition.

Transposition: Semantic Encoding

In some cases, a transposition may be semantically encoded using the basic pattern for an apparatus entry. In example 1 (Ov. *Tr.* 3.12.36ff., text above), there are basically two forms of the text: with and without the transposition. Since the editor (Hall) has accepted Wilamowitz' proposed transposition, the transposed version is contained in <lem> and the original is contained in <rdg>:

```
<l n="35">ille quidem mirum ni de regione propinqua</l>
<l n="36">non nisi uicinas tutus ararit aquas.</l>
<app>
 <lem xml:id="lem-3.12.41-42"
  exclude="#rdg-3.12.41-42" type="emendation">
  <l n="41">fas quoque ab ore freti longaeque Propontidos
      undis</l>
  <l n="42">huc aliquem certo uela dedisse Noto.</l>
 </lem>
 <note target="#lem-3.12.41-42">41-42 post 36 transposuit <ref target="#Wilamowitz">Wilamowitz</r
</app>
<l n="37">rarus ab Italia tantum mare nauita transit,</l>
```

```
<l n="38">litora rarus in haec portubus orba uenit.</l>
<l n="39">siue tamen Graia scierit siue ille Latina</l>
<l n="40">uoce loqui—certe gratior huius erit</l>
<app>
 <rdg xml:id="rdg-3.12.41-42"
  exclude="#lem-3.12.41-42">
  <l n="41">fas quoque ab ore freti longaeque Propontidos
       undis</l>
  <l n="42">huc aliquem certo uela dedisse Noto.</l>
 </rdg>
</app>
```

This will allow users to toggle between the original and emended versions of the text. Using *exclude* ensures that lines 41–42 will never be displayed in two places at once. When the lemma (i.e., Wilamowitz' emendation) is displayed in the edition text, lines 41–42 will follow line 36. When the reading that has lines 41–42 following line 40 is selected for display, Wilamowitz' emendation will be excluded from the display.

More complicated transpositions, like the one in the second example below, operate in the same way: using *exclude* and *require* ensures that mutually exclusive readings are never displayed together.

Keeping track of the mutually exclusive readings can be a challenge, as the example below demonstrates. When encoding complex transpositions, it can be helpful to make a table or to use some other method of keeping track of the mutually exclusive readings.

Example 2 (Ov. *Met.*, 1.304–305, text above). In this example, the witness known as Bern transposes portions of two lines. Witnesses H M[ac] (and N[ac]) conflate the lines, which is another kind of transposition (or omission). That is, it can be assumed that they did not write the first half of the line at 304 and the second half of the line at 305, but rather wrote the two halves together on the same line (i.e., *nat lupus inter oues, nec uires fulminis apro*).

```
<app>
<!-- <app> enclosing the entire passage in question. -->
 <lem>
<!-- <lem> enclosing full text of lines 304 and 305. -->
  <l n="304">
   <app>
<!-- First nested <app>, marking one of the conflated half-lines. -->
    <lem xml:id="lem-304-nat">nat lupus inter
          oues,</lem>
   </app>
   <app>
<!-- Second nested <app>, handling the variant that transposes half-lines. -->
    <lem xml:id="lem-304-fuluos"
     require="#lem-305-unda">fuluos uehit unda leones,</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Bern" xml:id="rdg-304-Bern"
     require="#rdg-305-Bern" copyOf="#lem-305-nec"/>
   </app>
  </l>
  <l n="305">unda uehit tigres; <app>
<!-- Third nested <app>, marking the other conflated or transposed half-line. -->
    <lem xml:id="lem-305-nec"
     require="#lem-304-nat">nec
          uires fulminis apro</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Bern" xml:id="rdg-305-Bern"
     require="#rdg-304-Bern" copyOf="#lem-304-fuluos"/>
   </app></l>
 </lem>
<!-- <rdg> enclosing the conflated lines in H and M -->
 <rdg wit="#H #M" xml:id="rdg-305-HM">
```

```
  <l n="304/5">
   <join target="#lem-304-nat #lem-305-nec"/>
  </l>
 </rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#M" target="#rdg-305-HM"
  type="correction-original">
  <hi rend="superscript">ac</hi>(N<hi rend="superscript">ac</hi></witDetail>
</app>
```

The extensive markup in this example calls for explication. The desired outcomes are:

- two lines printed in the edition text.

- a variant reading showing two lines with half-lines transposed.

- a variant reading that conflates the two lines.

These outcomes require nested <app> elements:

- The first <app> encloses the entire passage. Its <lem> encloses the text of lines 304 and 305 as the editor wishes them to be printed in the edition text.

- The first nested <app> encloses one of the conflated half-lines with <lem> and gives it an *xml:id* so that its value can be copied elsewhere using *copyOf*. There is no <rdg> here because none of the variations differs in content or position.

- The second nested <app> encloses the second half of line 304 in <lem> so that Bern's transposition, enclosed in <rdg>, can be swapped into its place.

- The third nested <app> encloses the second of the conflated half-lines in <lem> and gives it an *xml:id* so that its value can be copied elsewhere using *copyOf*. Its <rdg> also allows for Bern's transposition to be completed.

Instead of entering the text of the transposed lines more than once, *copyOf* causes the text to be inserted automatically. This not only reduces the potential for errors in transcription, but also acknowledges that the text is otherwise identical.

The use of *require* ensures that Bern's transposed lines will be displayed or printed together. That is, the reader will not see one correctly transposed half-line and one without transposition, since that would be a false representation of Bern's text.

The use of <join> to represent the conflated lines in H and M allows the text of the two lemmata in question to be copied and displayed or printed together.

The effort required to keep track of the mutually exclusive readings pays off in the ability to swap the conflated and transposed readings in and out of the edition text in the digital version.

8.11.5 Connected Readings

In some cases, it may be necessary to show that a witness or a source has variants in separate places that are related to each other. For example, the text of Calp. 6.68 is as follows: '*imminet exesa veluti testudine concha.*'. Heinsius proposes *exesae - conchae*. That means that whenever *exesa* is displayed, *concha* must also be displayed, and whenever one of Heinsius' conjectures is displayed, the other one must accompany it.

As with line transpositions, *exclude* and *require* are used to prevent mutually exclusive readings from being displayed together. Calp. 6.68 should be encoded as follows:

```
<l>imminet <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-6.68-exesa"
   exclude="#rdg-6.68-conchae" require="#lem-6.68-concha">exesa</lem>
  <rdg source="#Heinsius"
   xml:id="rdg-6.68-exesae" exclude="#lem-6.68-concha"
   require="#rdg-6.68-conchae">exesae</rdg>
 </app> veluti testudine <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-6.68-concha"
   exclude="#rdg-6.68-exesae" require="#lem-6.68-exesa">concha</lem>
  <rdg xml:id="rdg-6.68-conchae"
   exclude="#lem-6.68-exesa" require="#rdg-6.68-exesae">conchae</rdg>
 </app></l>
```

8.11.6   Corrections

Correction has been discussed in the section "Concepts and Definitions." In short, for the purposes of these guidelines, "correction" describes any attempt by the original copyist or some other hand to alter a witness' reading, whether or not the result matches what is in the main edition text.

The amount of detail to report about corrections is a matter for editors to decide; these guidelines accommodate a range of approaches. When determining the method to use, editors should bear in mind not only the amount of detail necessary to communicate the nature of a correction, but also the functionality they want their edition to support. The subsections below include discussions intended to help editors make those determinations.

Before reading the encoding guidelines for corrections, it is recommended to read the section "Correction as Metadata" to understand the concepts behind the guidelines.

Correction as Metadata

Over time, editors have devised creative ways of reporting corrections. The simplest method is to report readings and annotate them with *ante correctionem*, *post correctionem*, or something similar. Another method is to add abbreviations for those phrases as superscript notations on manuscript sigla (e.g., B^{ac}, B^{pc}). Sometimes it is necessary to provide more detail about the method of correction, in which cases editors will either describe the correction (e.g., t *exp.*, r *add. s.l.*) or they will try to represent it typographically (e.g., refert^{r}e). Some rely on superscript notation for all of these details (e.g., P^{csl} = P *correctio supra lineam*).

The different methods have advantages and disadvantages, but each one effectively demonstrates that correction is a complex subject. Even the word "correction" is problematic, since it can refer to the result of a process or the process itself. Therefore, representing correction faithfully in a digital critical edition depends on careful analysis of the information that comprises a correction.

Aside from judgments about correctness, "correction" may involve at least five kinds of information:

- a reading.

- the state of the reading: original or altered.

- an agent or agents (i.e., the correcting hand or hands).

- a method or methods of correction (i.e., deletion, addition above the line, etc.).

- the relationship between the original reading and the altered reading.

In the context of a digital edition, it is useful to think of readings as the data, and the information about state, agency, method, and relationship as metadata, or data about the data.

Not all of these metadata items will be reported in every instance. The original reading, for example, obviously does not have an agent (beyond the witness to the reading) or a method of correction, but it will have a state (original). The original reading might have a correspondence to show that it is related to its altered form, if one is provided, but it is not always necessary to report the altered form. For example, if the altered form matches the lemma in the main text of the edition, it may be sufficient to report the

original form with a note that it was corrected (the inference being that it was corrected to the lemma printed in the edition, if no other form is reported). Similarly, it may not be necessary to report the method of correction.

It is possible to use techniques described elsewhere in these guidelines to encode the details of corrections (e.g., deletion and/or addition of characters), but it is also possible to describe those details in prose. The examples below demonstrate both options.

The simplest way of encoding descriptions is to define sigla in the <handNote> section of a manuscript description. For example, an editor might define V^{ac} and V^{pc} for readings of manuscript V before and after correction, if it makes sense to do so. However, in cases where there are multiple hands or other factors to consider, hard coding the state of correction may restrict options for representing the manuscript's data.

Correction: Specifications

Readings before and after correction are encoded as any other readings, i.e., with <rdg> inside of <app>. The details of the correction are contained in <witDetail>, with the use of several attributes to determine how the information is processed.

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading.

<wit> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation.

<witDetail> (witness detail) may be empty (i.e., self-closing) or it may contain a prose description. If empty, the values of the attributes (described below) will provide the essential information.

wit (witness) has as its value the machine-readable siglum of the witness that has the original or the altered reading.

target has as its value the *xml:id* of the reading in question.

type has one of the following values to classify the correction. Possible values:

- correction-original: the original reading, i.e., before correction (*ante correctionem* or a.c.). If <witDetail> with this type is self-closing, the LDLT reader will insert "(a.c.)" after the siglum for the witness designated in *wit*. Otherwise, the value of <witDetail> will be inserted in parentheses after the siglum for the witness designated in *wit*.

- correction-altered: the altered reading, i.e., after correction (*post correctionem* or p.c.). If <witDetail> with this type is self-closing, the LDLT reader will insert "(p.c.)" after the witness designated in *wit*. Otherwise, the value of <witDetail> will be inserted in parentheses after the siglum for the witness designated in *witt*.

It is impossible to describe all of the possible scenarios for correction, but the examples in the following sections should provide a basis for determining how to encode the most common instances.

Correction: Examples

Example 1   The first example is simple correction of a variant reading to the lemma: protegit] protegis **G** (a.c.).

It is clear in this instance what the reading after correction is, so there is no need to report it. There is also no need to list all of the other witnesses to the lemma, since it is clear that the uncorrected form is a unique reading. Also, the editor has decided that it is not useful to indicate which hand made the correction. In this example, manuscript **G** simply has the variant reading *protegis* for the lemma *protegit*, to which the variant reading in **G** has been corrected in some way.

The encoding for the prose method and the semantic markup method are identical for such a straightforward correction:

```
<app>
 <lem xml:id="lem-protegit">protegit</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G" xml:id="rdg-protegis">protegis</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#G" target="#rdg-protegis"
  type="correction-original"/>
</app>
```

That is, <witDetail> uses *target* to point to the variant reading, and *type* shows that *protegis* is the original, uncorrected form.

Example 2   This example is similar to the first one, but it is necessary to indicate the hand that made the correction.

The lemma is *insidias*. Manuscript **N** has *insidia*; N^2 has added the letter "s." A traditional apparatus criticus might report this as follows: insidias] insidia **N** (corr. N^2).

As in the first example, the encoding for the prose method and the semantic markup method are identical:

```
<app>
 <lem xml:id="lem-insidias">insidias</lem>
 <rdg wit="#N" xml:id="rdg-insidia">insidia</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#N" target="#rdg-insidia"
  type="correction-original">corr. <hi rend="bold">N<hi rend="superscript">2</hi></hi></witDetail
</app>
```

This encoding will produce the following entry in the apparatus criticus: insidias] insidia **N** (corr. N^2)

Example 3   In this example, a variant reading is corrected to the lemma, but for a number of reasons it is important to indicate the reading before and after correction.

The witness **N** originally had *co* and *ice* with an erasure of two characters between them. The correcting hand N^2 has inserted the letters "r" and "t" in the erasure. The corrected form (*cortice*) matches the reading in witnesses **P** and **V**. Another reading is present in witnesses **G** and **A**.

A traditional apparatus criticus might report this as follows: cortice N^2 (*p.c.*, rt *add. in ras.*) **PV** : co□ ..□ ice **N** (a.c.) : codice **G A**.

In the prose method, the details are described in <witDetail>:

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#N2 #P #V" xml:id="lem-cortice">cortice</lem>
 <witDetail wit="#N2" target="#lem-cortice"
  type="correction-altered">rt <hi rend="italic">add. in
      ras.</hi></witDetail>
 <rdg wit="#N" xml:id="rdg-coice">co□..□ice</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#N" target="#rdg-coice"
  type="correction-original"/>
 <rdg wit="#G #A">codice</rdg>
</app>
```

This encoding will produce the following entry in the apparatus criticus: cortice N^2 (*p.c.*, rt *add. in ras.*) **PV** : co□ ..□ ice **N** (a.c.) : codice **G A**.

The semantic markup method uses techniques described elsewhere in these guidelines to make the details readable by humans and machines:

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#N2 #P #V" xml:id="lem-cortice">cortice</lem>
 <witDetail wit="#N2" target="#lem-cortice"
```

```
   type="correction-altered">
   <add place="inRas">rt</add>
 </witDetail>
 <rdg wit="#N" xml:id="rdg-coice">co<del rend="erasure">
   <gap reason="lost" quantity="2"
    unit="character"/>
  </del>ice</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#N" target="#rdg-coice"
  type="correction-original"/>
 <rdg wit="#G #A">codice</rdg>
</app>
```

That encoding would produce the following entry: cortice N^2 (*p.c.*, rt *add. in ras.*) **PV** : co□ ..□ ice **N** (a.c.) : codice **G A**.

Example 4   This example includes multiple corrections.

The lemma is *descripta*. Manuscript **N** originally had *dipicta*, but N^1 corrected it to *depicta*. Another hand (N^2 has *descripta* in the margin. Other manuscripts support these and other readings.

A traditional apparatus criticus might report this as follows: descripta **P V** N^2 (in mg.) : depicta **G** N^1 (p.c.) : dipicta **N** (a.c.).

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#N2 #P #V"
  xml:id="lem-descripta">descripta</lem>
 <witDetail wit="#N2"
  target="#lem-descripta">in
     mg.</witDetail>
 <rdg wit="#G #N1" xml:id="rdg-depicta">depicta</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#N1" target="#rdg-depicta"
  type="correction-altered"/>
 <rdg wit="#N" xml:id="rdg-dipicta">dipicta</rdg>
 <witDetail wit="#N" target="#rdg-dipicta"
  type="correction-original"/>
</app>
```

This encoding will produce the following entry in the apparatus criticus: descripta N^2 (in mg. **PV** : depicta **G** N^1 (p.c.) : dipicta **N** (a.c.).

Note that it is not possible to use the semantic markup method (i.e., <add> with *place*="margin") for the marginal reading of N^2, since the same reading appears in other witnesses in the text itself. Instead, the notation "in mg." is inserted using <witDetail>.

8.11.7   Conjecture and Emendation

As explained in the section Concepts and Definitions, conjectures are readings that are not supported by documentary evidence, but are instead proposed by someone and considered by the editor to be worthy of inclusion in a critical edition. A conjecture is called an emendation if it is adopted as the official reading of a particular criticial edition's main text. In other words, for the purposes of these guidelines, an emendation is a "successful conjecture." But above all, conjectures and emendations are readings (<lem> or <rdg>), and they are encoded as such in LDLT editions.

Traditionally, conjectures and emendations have been annotated in various ways in critical editions (e.g., *ci.* or *conj.* for *coniecit*, *em.* or *emend.* for *emendavit*, among others). They should be annotated in digital editions, too, both to facilitate their identification and to enable features such as filtering and searching for them. The annotation is accomplished with *type*.

Since an emendation is a conjecture that has been adopted for the main text of the edition, only <lem> may have *type* with the value "emendation." It could be inferred that a lemma with *source* only is an emendation, but in the interest of being explicit, an emendation should be annotated accordingly. Using *type* with the value of "emendation" will also facilitate searching and filtering for emendations.

Conversely, only <rdg> may have *type* with the value "conjecture." It could be inferred that a reading with *source* only is a conjecture, but it is best to be explicit in the identification, if for no other reason than ensuring that "conjecture" is available as a criterion for searching and filtering.

The following example demonstrates how to encode both an emendation and a conjecture.

```
<app>
 <lem source="#Haupt1854" type="emendation"
  xml:id="lem-plenumque">plenumque</lem>
 <note target="#lem-plenumque">prob. <ref taret="#Keene">Keene</ref>
    et <ref target="#Schenkl">Schenkl</ref></note>
 <rdg wit="#ω" source="#edd.">primumque</rdg>
 <rdg source="#Baehr." type="conjecture">rivumque</rdg>
 <rdg source="#CSchenkl" type="conjecture">pronumque</rdg>
</app>
```

This encoding will produce *plenumque* in the main text of the edition and the following in the apparatus criticus: plenumque] *em.* Haupt (*prob.* Keene *et* Schenkl), primumque **ω** *edd.*, rivumque *ci.* Baehr., pronumque *ci.* C. Schenkl.

Multiple conjectures proposed by a single person should be contained in <rdgGrp> and separated by <note> with value *vel* (or something similar).

```
<app>
 <lem>pallenti</lem>
 <rdgGrp>
  <rdg source="#Heins." type="conjecture">ridenti</rdg>
  <note>vel</note>
  <rdg source="#Heins." type="conjecture">varianti</rdg>
  <note>vel</note>
  <rdg source="#Heins." type="conjecture">vernanti</rdg>
  <note>vel</note>
  <rdg source="#Heins." type="conjecture">roranti</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

This would be displayed in the apparatus criticus as pallenti] ridenti *vel* varianti *vel* vernanti *vel* roranti *ci.* Heins.

Tentative Conjectures

Occasionally, editors propose conjectures at the end of an entry in the critical apparatus but express uncertainty or doubt about the viability of the proposal.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

- <note> before the <rdg> contains the interrogative *an* or a similar remark to introduce a tentative conjecture. Another <note> after the <rdg> contains a question mark to end the entry. The second <note> may also contain other text (e.g., a parenthetical reference to a passage that supports the conjecture). Each <note> must have an *xml:id*. The attributes *next* and *prev* must be used to connect the two notes.

- <rdg> with *type*="conjecture" and *cert*="low" indicates that the reading is a tentative conjecture.

For example, Cynthia Damon prints the following in her OCT edition of Caesar's *De Bello Civili* at 1.24.3: relicto praetore] -tis -oribus *Basiner coll. Cic. Att. 9.6.1 : an* [r- p-]?

At the end of that entry, Damon has suggested the deletion of *relicto praetore*, but it is only a suggestion for others to consider. In an LDLT edition, that would be encoded as follows:

```
<app>
 <lem>relicto praetore</lem>
 <rdg source="#Basiner" type="conjecture"
  xml:id="rdg-1.24.3-relictis-praetoribus">relictis
     praetoribus</rdg>
 <note target="#rdg-1.24.3-relictis-praetoribus">coll.
  <bibl>
   <author>Cic.</author>
   <title>Att.</title> 9.6.1</bibl></note>
 <note xml:id="note-1.24.3-a"
  next="#note-1.24.3-b">an</note>
 <rdg source="#Damon" type="conjecture"
  cert="low">
  <surplus>relicto praetore</surplus>
 </rdg>
 <note xml:id="note-1.24.3-b"
  prev="note-1.24.3-a">?</note>
</app>
```

Editorial Addition and Deletion

In some cases, an editor may wish to indicate that text has been supplied or removed by conjecture. The following subsections describe the methods for encoding editorial additions and deletions.

Editorial Addition   < > = Text added or supplied by conjecture where text does not exist in the documentary evidence.

<supplied> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

- <supplied> encloses text supplied by someone in the absence of text in the documentary evidence. It may be used in <lem> or <rdg>.

For example, Cynthia Damon prints the following in her OCT of Caesar's *De Bello Civili*: *Ipsi Massilienses et celeritate nauium et scientia gubernatorum confisi nostros eludebant impetusque eorum excipiebant <cedendo>.*

Her apparatus criticus has the following:

excipiebant <cedendo> *scripsi ex Luc. 3.55 (cf. Liu. 29.34.13)* : <non> exc- *Kramer* : dec- *Nipperdey (cf. Stat. Theb. 2.304)* : effugiebant *Terpstra coll. 2.41.6* : *nisi mauis e.g.* <laxata classe> exc- *ex Luc. 3.548 (cf. BG 2.25.2)*.

Every instance of text enclosed in < > indicates that text has been added where text does not exist in the documentary evidence.

In an LDLT edition, that would be encoded as follows:

```
<p>Ipsi Massilienses et celeritate nauium et scientia
   gubernatorum confisi nostros eludebant impetusque eorum <app>
  <lem source="#Damon" type="emendation"
   xml:id="lem-1.58.1-excipiebant-cedendo">excipiebant
   <supplied>cedendo</supplied></lem>
  <note target="#lem-1.58.1-excipiebant-cedendo">scripsi
      ex <bibl>
     <author>Luc.</author> 3.55</bibl> (cf. <ref target="#Liue">Liu</ref>.
29.34.13)</note>
  <rdg source="#Kramer" type="conjecture">
   <supplied>non</supplied> excipiebant</rdg>
  <rdg source="#Nipperdey"
   type="conjecture" xml:id="rdg-1.58.1-decipiebant">decipiebant</rdg>
```

```
  <note target="#rdg-1.58.1-decipiebant">(cf.
   <bibl>
    <author>Stat.</author>
    <title>Theb.</title> 2.304</bibl>)</note>
  <rdg source="#Terpstra" type="conjecture"
   xml:id="rdg-1.58.1-effugiebant">effugiebant</rdg>
  <note target="#rdg-1.58.1-effugiebant">coll.
       2.41.6</note>
  <note>nisi mauis e.g. <laxata classe> exc- ex
   <bibl>
    <author>Luc.</author> 3.548</bibl> (cf.
   <bibl>
    <title>BG</title> 2.25.2</bibl>)</note>
 </app>.</p>
```

The use of <supplied> will cause < and > to be inserted on either side of the text added by conjecture. The rest of the information is handled as a normal entry in the apparatus criticus.

If it is desirable to indicate in the apparatus criticus that a previous editor has proposed adding some text, even if the addition has not been adopted for the main text of the edition, <supplied> should be used inside of <rdg>. If the reading is swapped into the main text in the digital version, it will appear inside < and >.

Editorial Deletion   { } = Text considered by the editor to be inauthentic, but nevertheless retained between braces in the edition to indicate that it is part of the text's documentary history.

Square brackets have been used to indicate editorial deletions in the past, but, as West argues (p. 80), this is apt to cause confusion, since square brackets have a different meaning for papyrologists and epigraphists (see "Undetermined Amount Of Text Lost" in these guidelines). Accordingly, LDLT editions follow West's suggestion to use braces to indicate editorial deletions.

<surplus> marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or
    redundant.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

- <surplus> contains text identified by the editor as added by someone other than the original author (e.g., interpolation).

- <note> contains information about the deletion (e.g., bibliography, comments). This allows editors to make the distinction between the usage of *secl.* and *del.*

For example, at section 29 of Suetonius' life of Claudius, Robert Kaster indicates in the text of his OCT edition that he accepts as correct the deletion of two words by previous scholars: 'His, ut dixi, uxoribusque addictus non principem {se} sed ministrum egit, compendio cuiusque horum uel etiam studio aut libidine honores exercitus impunitates supplicia largitus {est} et quidem insciens plerumque et ignarus.'

The entry for the first one in the apparatus criticus has the following: 'se *secl. Graev. 1697, 411 (Polak 1882, 12)*'. The entry for the second one is as follows: 'est *del. Bent.*'.

In an LDLT edition, the deletion would be encoded in the text as follows:

```
<p>His, ut dixi, uxoribusque addictus non principem <app>
  <lem xml:id="lem-29-se" source="#Graev.">
   <surplus>se</surplus>
  </lem>
  <note target="#lem-29-se">secl. <ref target="#Graev.">Graev. 1697, 411</ref>
(<ref target="#Polak">Polak 1882, 12</ref>)</note>
 </app> sed ministrum egit, compendio cuiusque horum uel
   etiam studio aut libidine honores exercitus impunitates
```

```
   supplicia largitus <app>
  <lem xml:id="#lem-29-est" source="#Bent.">
   <surplus>est</surplus>
  </lem>
  <note target="#lem-29-est">del. <ref target="#Bent.">Bent.</ref></note>
 </app> et quidem insciens
   plerumque et ignarus.</p>
```

The use of <surplus> will cause the braces { } to be inserted on both sides of the word(s) to be deleted. The rest of the information is handled as a normal entry in the apparatus criticus.

If it is desirable to indicate in the apparatus criticus that a previous editor has proposed deleting some text, even if the deletion has not been adopted for the main text of the edition, <surplus> should be used inside of <rdg>. If the reading is swapped into the main text in the digital version, the braces { } will be displayed around the reading.

8.11.8   Conjectured Lacunae

<***> = A lacuna has been conjectured on the grounds of style, context, or carelessness of a copyist (e.g., *saut du même au même*). No text has been supplied in its place.

The conjectured lacuna itself should be encoded with <gap> with *reason*="lost" as indicated in the section "Lacunae." To indicate that it has been added by conjecture, <gap> should be enclosed by <supplied>. Further, if it has been accepted by the editor of the edition, it should be contained by <lem> with *type*="emendation". If the conjectured lacuna is only noted in the apparatus criticus, then it should be contained by <rdg> with *type*="conjecture".

For example, at the conclusion of section 3.8.4 of Julius Caesar's *de Bello Civili*, Cynthia Damon's OCT edition has the following in the main text: *si in Caesaris complexum uenire posset ***.* The apparatus criticus has the following annotation: *lacunam statuit Vascosanus*.

In an LDLT edition, that should be encoded as follows:

```
<p>si in Caesaris complexum uenire posset <app>
  <lem source="#Vascosanus"
   type="emendation">
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </lem>
 </app></p>
```

The same encoding should be used to indicate the conjectured lacuna of a number of lines of verse. For example, Verdière argues that nine verses have been omitted by the copyist of the archetype of all manuscripts of Calpurnius Siculus' eclogues. He prints nine lines of equally spaced dots in the text, and he writes in the apparatus criticus, 'u. 1−9 *librarii incuria cecidisse puto*.'

If the editor of an LDLT edition of Calpurnius accepts this argument, Verdière's conjecture would be encoded as follows:

```
<app type="line-omission">
 <lem source="#Verdière" xml:id="lem-1.1-9">
  <supplied>
   <gap reason="lost" quantity="9"
    unit="lines"/>
  </supplied>
 </lem>
 <note target="#lem-1.1-9">u. 1-9 librarii incuria cecidisse putavit
     Verdière</note>
</app>
```

In the digital or print version, nine lines of < *** > would be printed at the beginning of the text, and the numbering of the lines that follow would begin with 10. The apparatus criticus would have the entry 'u. 1–9 librarii incuria cecidisse putavit Verdière'.

8.12   Crux

† † = Text deemed by the editor to be readable but not understandable, with no satisfactory alternative or convincing emendation.

<sic> (Latin for *thus* or *so*) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

<sic> indicates that the text is readable but not understandable. In this usage it is not paired with <corr>, its customary partner in the TEI guidelines, because the nature of a crux is that it cannot be corrected.

For example, at section 2.4.12 of Macrobius' *Saturnalia*, Robert Kaster marks two words in the text of his OCT edition with *cruces*:'… "vale mel gentium †meculle†, ebur ex Etruria, lasar Arretinum, adamas Supernas, Tiberinum margaritum, Cilniorum smargde, iaspi figulorum, berulle Porsenae, carbunculum †habeas†, ἵνα συντέμω πάντα, ἄλλαγμα moecharum."'

In the apparatus criticus for the first crux, Kaster has the following: 'meculle *Nβ*(melcule *DP²G, n.l. P¹*): Medulliae *Turnebus 1604, 584*.' The second one is simpler: 'habeas] Hadriae *Jahn*'.

The following example demonstrates how these *cruces* would be encoded in an LDLT edition:

```
<p>
 <quote>vale mel gentium <app>
   <lem wit="#N #β" xml:id="lem-meculle">
    <sic>meculle</sic>
   </lem>
   <note target="#lem-meculle">melcule <ref target="#D">D</ref>
    <ref target="#P2">P<hi rend="superscript">2</hi></ref>
    <ref target="#G">G</ref>, n.l. <ref target="#P1">P<hi rend="superscript">1</hi></ref></note>
   <rdg source="#Turnebus"
    xml:id="rdg-Medulliae">Medulliae</rdg>
   <note target="#rdg-Medulliae">584</note>
  </app>, ebur ex Etruria, lasar Arretinum, adamas Supernas, Tiberinum
    margaritum, Cilniorum smaragde, iaspi figulorum, berulle Porsenae,
    carbunculum <app>
  <lem>
   <sic>habeas</sic>
  </lem>
  <rdg source="#Jahn">Hadriae</rdg>
 </app>, <foreign xml:lang="grc">ἵνα συντέμω πάντα, ἄλλαγμα</foreign>
    moecharum.</quote>
</p>
```

The use of <sic> would cause the symbol † to be placed on both ends of each crux. The rest of the information would be handled in the normal manner for readings in the apparatus criticus.

8.13   Tagging Readings for Analysis

An editor may enhance an edition's functionality by adding one or more of the analytical "tags" listed below. Use of these tags will enable additional filtering and querying functionality, such as filtering out purely orthographical variants or focusing on variants that affect the syntax of the text.

It is up to the editor to decide how extensively to apply these analytical tags, if at all. If analytical tags are used, the preface should make clear which ones are used and why they are used. For example, an editor may wish only to tag orthographical variants so that users can filter them in or out of the text as they please.

ana (analysis) on <rdg> applies one or more of the following values to a reading:

• lexical: the reading differs from the lemma by offering an entirely different lexeme.

- morphological: the reading differs from the lemma in its grammatical form.

- ordinal: the reading changes the order in which units (letters, words, phrases, sentences, lines) occur in the lemma.

- orthographical: the reading differs from the lemma only in spelling (i.e., not in any grammatically significant way).

- syntactic: the reading differs from the lemma in its grammatical construction or arrangement.

- subtractive: omission of some unit of text through oversight, erasure, or some other cause.

- additive: an interpolation, i.e., some text judged by the editor to have entered the tradition through the mistaken or deliberate copying of auxiliary material (e.g., glosses, marginalia, etc.).

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#N #P #GlaeserSqq">vicit</lem>
 <rdg wit="#G" ana="#morphological">vīcit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#d" ana="#lexical">ludit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#V" ana="#lexical">lusit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#μ" ana="#lexical">visit</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#γ" ana="#subtractive"/>
</app>
```

8.14   Editorial Notes

These guidelines cover most of the types of information commonly found in a critical apparatus, but not all of them, since it would be impossible to anticipate everything any editor of a text would ever need to encode.

If a certain kind of annotation or comment is needed, but a method for encoding it is not described in these guidelines, <witDetail> or <note> may be used *ad hoc*, depending on whether the subject is a single witness (<witDetail>) or something of a more general nature (<note>).

These guidelines may also be extended as the community of users discovers and proposes additional encoding patterns to the staff of the LDLT.

9   Commentary

Traditionally, extended commentary on textual matters has been published apart from the critical edition (e.g., as a monograph or in textual notes published in periodicals). Editors of LDLT editions are encouraged to include longer notes on textual matters in a section enclosed in <div> with *xml:id*="textual-commentary".

This section demonstrates how to encode longer notes.

<note> contains a note or annotation.

<anchor> is an empty element placed at a point in the main text that is the subject of an extended note. It must have *xml:id* so that the note can point to it. It must also have *corresp* pointing to the *xml:id* of the note in the commentary so that a link can be inserted directly to the note.

<note> with *type*="commentary" and *target* pointing to the *xml:id* of the <anchor> contains the text of the note, which is written in prose using <p>.

For example, after Calp. 4.96, Giarratano prints five unnumbered lines of dots to indicate that he believes a stanza is missing. At 4.97, he includes in his apparatus criticus an extended discussion about his rearrangement of several sets of lines. In an LDLT edition, it is preferable to put that sort of discussion in the textual commentary. The following example demonstrates how it would be encoded in an LDLT edition:

```xml
<app type="line-omission">
 <lem source="#Giarratano"
  type="emendation" xml:id="lem-4.96-gap">
<!-- Lines are not numbered so as not to interrupt the traditional numbering -->
  <l>
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </l>
  <l>
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </l>
  <l>
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </l>
  <l>
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </l>
  <l>
   <supplied>
    <gap reason="lost"/>
   </supplied>
  </l>
 </lem>
 <note target="#lem-4.96-gap">quinque vv. deesse puto. <anchor xml:id="gap-4.96"
   corresp="#comm-4.96"/></note>
</app>
<l n="97">Aspicis, ut virides audito Caesare silvae</l>
<!-- Edition continues until end. -->
<div type="commentary">
 <note type="commentary"
  target="#lem-4.96-gap" xml:id="comm-4.96">
  <p>4.96: Carmen amoebaeum, quod vocatur, cum ex impari stropharum numero
      constare nequeat, in hac ecloga integrum non esses <ref target="#Hermann">G.
Hermann</ref> (ad Bion. et Mosch. p. 46)
      primus sensit. <ref target="#Schenkl">Schenkl</ref> autem censuit
      deesse stropham quae olim opposita fuit strophae VIII itidemque
      comite carere III, quam ob rem in editione priore vir doctissimus
      III post XI transposuit lacunameque in utraque editione post F. Leo
      (Zeitsch. f. d. oesterr. Gymn. XXXVI p. 619) XIII post III
      collocavit ut v. 141 carmen amoebaeum concluderetur. Mihi quidem,
      cum strophae I, et II, IV et V, VI et VII, IX et X, XII et XIII
      invicem sibi respondeant, visum est lacunem post III constituere et
      XI transponere ante VIII.</p>
 </note>
</div>
```

This encoding will produce the following in a digital or print version:

- five unnumbered lines of < *** >

- The following note in the apparatus criticus: quinque vv. deesse puto.

- The symbol ◊ after the note indicating further discussion is available in the textual commentary.

- A note in the textual commentary.

The digital version will have the additional feature of links from the apparatus to the commentary and from the commentary to the apparatus.

10 Works Cited

The following is a list of works cited in these guidelines.**Editions**

[1] Bazán, C., K. Emery, T. Noone, R. Plevano, A. Traver, eds. *B. Ioannis Duns Scoti Quaestiones Super Secundum et Tertium De Anima*. B. Ioannis Duns Scoti Opera Philosophica 5. Washington, D.C.: The Catholic University of America Press, 2006.

[2] Damon, C., ed. *C. Iuli Caesaris Commentariorum Libri III De Bello Civili*. Oxford Classical Texts. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 2015.

[3] Gelsomino, Remo, ed. *Vibius Sequester*. Bibliotheca Scriptorum Graecorum et Romanorum Teubneriana. Leipzig: B. G. Teubner, 1967.

[4] Giarratano, Caesar, ed. *Calpurnii et Nemesiani Bucolica*. Naples: Detken and Rocholl, 1910.

[5] Hall, J. B., ed. *Ovidius: Tristia*. Bibliotheca Scriptorum Graecorum et Romanorum Teubneriana. Stuttgart and Leipzig: B. G. Teubner, 1995.

[6] Kaster, Robert A., ed. *Macrobii Ambrosii Theodosii Saturnalia*. Oxford Classical Texts. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 2011.

[7] ———, ed. *C. Suetoni Tranquilli De Vita Caesarum Libros VIII et De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus Librum*. Oxford Classical Texts. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 2016.

[8] Lindsay, W. M., ed. *Festus: De Verborum Significatu cum Pauli Epitome*. Bibliotheca Scriptorum Graecorum et Romanorum Teubneriana. Stuttgart and Leipzig: B. G. Teubner, 1913.

[9] Tarrant, R. J., ed. *P. Ovidi Nasoni Metamorphoses*. Oxford Classical Texts. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 2004.

[10] Verdière, Raoul, ed. *T. Calpurnii Siculi De laude Pisonis et Bucolica et M. Annaei Lucani De laude Caesaris Einsidlensia quae dicuntur carmina*. Collection Latomus 19. Berchem-Bruxelles: Latomus: Revue d'Études Latines, 1954.

Guidelines

[1] Elliott, Tom, Gabriel Bodard, Hugh Cayless et al. *EpiDoc: Epigraphic Documents in TEI XML*. Online material, available: http://epidoc.sf.net (2016-09-17).

[2] Marsh, Jonathan Daniel Veillard, Norman Walsh. *xml:id Version 1.0* W3C Recommendation 9 September 2005 https://www.w3.org/TR/xml-id/ (2016-09-17)

[3] TEI Consortium, eds. *TEI P5: Guidelines for Electronic Text Encoding and Interchange*. Version 3.0.0. Last updated on 29th March 2016, revision 89ba24e. TEI Consortium. http://www.tei-c.org/Guidelines/P5/ (2016-09-17).

Other References

[1] Cayless, Hugh. "*TEI Next*." n.d., n.p. https://docs.google.com/document/d/15yT6s8hR4JmWcLVjpyJgo75Z2Sh1sJ (2017-11-01).

Other Works Cited

[1] University of Chicago Press Staff. *The Chicago Manual of Style*, 16th ed. Chicago: Chicago University Press, 2010

[2] West, M. L. *Textual Criticism and Editorial Technique Applicable to Greek and Latin Texts*. Stuttgart: B. G. Teubner, 1973.

11   The DLL Critical Editions Schema

11.1   Elements

\<TEI\> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, combining a single TEI header with one or more members of the **model.resourceLike** class. Multiple TEI elements may be combined to form a \<teiCorpus\> element. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.
   Status Optional
   Datatype teidata.version
   Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the *source* of the \<schemaSpec\> element. The current version is P5.

Contained by teiCorpus

May contain

header: teiHeader

textstructure: text

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc

Note This element is required. It is customary to specify the TEI namespace http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0 on it, using the *xmlns* attribute.

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
   <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
   </titleStmt>
   <publicationStmt>
    <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5
          version using a name space.</p>
   </publicationStmt>
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
 </teiHeader>
 <text>
  <body>
   <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
  </body>
```

```
      </text>
    </TEI>
```

Example

```
    <TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
     <teiHeader>
      <fileDesc>
       <titleStmt>
        <title>A TEI Document containing four page images </title>
       </titleStmt>
       <publicationStmt>
        <p>Unpublished demonstration file.</p>
       </publicationStmt>
       <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
       </sourceDesc>
      </fileDesc>
     </teiHeader>
     <facsimile>
      <graphic url="page1.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2.png"/>
      <graphic url="page3.png"/>
      <graphic url="page4.png"/>
     </facsimile>
    </TEI>
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/> <s:ns prefix="xs"
      uri="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema"/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <classRef key="model.resourceLike"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element TEI
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( tei_teiHeader, tei_model.resourceLike+ )
}
```

<ab> (anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous
      container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage
      of, a paragraph. [16.3. Blocks, Segments, and Anchors]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
      (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.fragmentable (@*part*) att.written (@*hand*)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote said sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

figures: cell figure

header: abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation langUsage licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl scriptNote segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msFrag msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc signatures source summary support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc

namesdates: event listRelation nym org person personGrp place state

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: back body div epigraph front

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Note   The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

Example

```
    <div type="book" n="Genesis">
     <div type="chapter" n="1">
      <ab>In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.</ab>
      <ab>And the earth was without form, and void; and
            darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the
            spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.</ab>
      <ab>And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.</ab>
    <!-- ...-->
     </div>
    </div>
```

Schematron <s:report test=”(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum |parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks |parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)”> Abstract model violation: ab may not contain paragraphs or other ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test=”ancestor::tei:l or ancestor::tei:lg”> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level divisions such as p or ab. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ab
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type allows the encoder to classify the abbreviation according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **suspension** the abbreviation provides the first letter(s) of the word or phrase, omitting the remainder.

contraction the abbreviation omits some letter(s) in the middle.

brevigraph the abbreviation comprises a special symbol or mark.

superscription the abbreviation includes writing above the line.

acronym the abbreviation comprises the initial letters of the words of a phrase.

title the abbreviation is for a title of address (Dr, Ms, Mr, …)

organization the abbreviation is for the name of an organization.

geographic the abbreviation is for a geographic name.

Note The *type* attribute is provided for the sake of those who wish to classify abbreviations at their point of occurrence; this may be useful in some circumstances, though usually the same abbreviation will have the same type in all occurrences. As the sample values make clear, abbreviations may be classified by the method used to construct them, the method of writing them, or the referent of the term abbreviated; the typology used is up to the encoder and should be carefully planned to meet the needs of the expected use. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see PETTY

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

Example

```
<choice>
 <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
 <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
 <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>
 <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
 <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abbr
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

**** contains a summary or formal abstract prefixed to an existing source document by the encoder. [2.4.4. Abstracts]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: list p

figures: table

linking: ab

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listApp listWit

Note   This element is intended only for cases where no abstract is available in the original source. Any abstract already present in the source document should be encoded as a <div> within the <front>, as it should for a born-digital document.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <abstract resp="#LB">
  <p>Good database design involves the acquisition and deployment of
        skills which have a wider relevance to the educational process.
From
        a set of more or less instinctive rules of thumb a formal
discipline
        or "methodology" of database design has evolved. Applying that
        methodology can be of great benefit to a very wide range of
academic
        subjects: it requires fundamental skills of abstraction and
        generalisation and it provides a simple mechanism whereby complex
        ideas and information structures can be represented and
manipulated,
        even without the use of a computer. </p>
 </abstract>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element abstract
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike | tei_model.listLike )+
}
```

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3. Accompanying Material]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope
   with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element accMat
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<acquisition> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution. [10.8. History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name> by
 <name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755.
 </acquisition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element acquisition
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<add> (addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the source text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

@place *Status* Optional

Legal values are: **above**

below

bottom

inline

inRas added in an erased area

interlinear

left

margin

mixed

opposite

overleaf

overstrike

right

top

unspecified

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl subst supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   In a diplomatic edition attempting to represent an original source, the <add> element should not be used for additions to the current TEI electronic edition made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> or <supplied> element are recommended.

In a TEI edition of a historical text with previous editorial emendations in which such additions or reconstructions are considered part of the source text, the use of <add> may be appropriate, dependent on the editorial philosophy of the project.

Example

```
The story I am
going to relate is true as to its main facts, and as to the
consequences <add place="above">of these facts</add> from which
this tale takes its title.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element add
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute place
   {
      "above"
    | "below"
    | "bottom"
    | "inline"
    | "inRas"
    | "interlinear"
    | "left"
```

```
        | "margin"
        | "mixed"
        | "opposite"
        | "overleaf"
        | "overstrike"
        | "right"
        | "top"
        | "unspecified"
    }?,
    tei_macro.paraContent}
```

\<addName\> (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<persName>
 <forename>Frederick</forename>
 <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
 <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName>
</persName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addName
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<addSpan\> (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an
author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also \<add\>). [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))
att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions
(*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*,
@confidence)))) (att.written (*@hand*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)
att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list

measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain   Empty element

Note   Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan> element itself, the end by the *spanTo* attribute.

Example

```
<handNote xml:id="HEOL"
 scribe="HelgiÓlafsson"/>
<!-- ... -->
<body>
 <div>
<!-- text here -->
 </div>
 <addSpan n="added gathering" hand="#HEOL"
  spanTo="#P025"/>
 <div>
<!-- text of first added poem here -->
 </div>
 <div>
<!-- text of second added poem here -->
 </div>
 <div>
<!-- text of third added poem here -->
 </div>
 <div>
<!-- text of fourth added poem here -->
 </div>
 <anchor xml:id="P025"/>
 <div>
<!-- more text here -->
 </div>
</body>
```

Schematron   <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert>

Schematron   <sch:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</sch:assert>

Content model   `<content/>`

Schema Declaration

```
element addSpan
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information. [10.9. Additional Information]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart

May contain

core: listBibl

msdescription: adminInfo surrogates

Example

```
<additional>
 <adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
   <p>
<!-- record history here -->
   </p>
  </recordHist>
  <custodialHist>
   <p>
<!-- custodial history here -->
   </p>
  </custodialHist>
 </adminInfo>
 <surrogates>
  <p>
<!-- information about surrogates here -->
  </p>
 </surrogates>
 <listBibl>
  <bibl>
<!-- ... -->
  </bibl>
<!-- full bibliography here -->
 </listBibl>
</additional>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
   <elementRef key="adminInfo" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="surrogates"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="listBibl" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element additional
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_adminInfo?, tei_surrogates?, tei_listBibl? )
}
```

<additions> contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<additions>
 <p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of
    single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a
drawing of
    a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v:
  <q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>,
    on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>,
    on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud
summu all huad
     batar þad mælgi ok mal</q>,
    On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue
maria gracia plena dominus</q>.</p>
</additions>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element additions { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the **model.addrPart** class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
 <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<addrLine>
 <ref target="tel:+1-201-555-0123">(201) 555 0123</ref>
</addrLine>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element addrLine { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. Addresses 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote
sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement
surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: addrLine cb gap gb index lb milestone name note pb postBox postCode rs street

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset
orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note   This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element
<addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available
from the **model.addrPart** class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

Example

```
<address>
 <street>via Marsala 24</street>
 <postCode>40126</postCode>
 <name>Bologna</name>
 <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
 <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
 <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
 <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
 <country key="FR"/>
 <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
 <postCode>69002</postCode>
 <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
```

```
   <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
   <street>
    <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</street>
  </address>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.addrPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element address
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.global*, ( tei_model.addrPart, tei_model.global* )+ )
}
```

<adminInfo> (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

msdescription: additional

May contain

core: note

header: availability

msdescription: custodialHist recordHist

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<adminInfo>
 <recordHist>
  <source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date></source>
 </recordHist>
 <availability>
  <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this
        collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask
```

```
repository staff for details
        if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
        Correspondence.</p>
 </availability>
 <custodialHist>
  <p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of
        Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p>
 </custodialHist>
</adminInfo>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="recordHist"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="availability"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="custodialHist"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element adminInfo
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    (
        tei_recordHist?,
        tei_availability?,
        tei_custodialHist?,
        tei_model.noteLike?
    )
}
```

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: msFrag msIdentifier

May contain

core: note

header: idno

msdescription: collection institution repository

namesdates: bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

Note An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.

Example

```
<altIdentifier>
 <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
 <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
 <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</altIdentifier>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"
   expand="sequenceOptional"/>
  <elementRef key="institution"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="repository"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="collection"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
  <elementRef key="note" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element altIdentifier
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_placeName?,
      tei_bloc?,
      tei_country?,
      tei_region?,
      tei_district?,
      tei_settlement?,
      tei_geogName?,
      tei_institution?,
      tei_repository?,
      tei_collection?,
      tei_idno,
      tei_note?
   )
}
```

<am> (abbreviation marker) contains a sequence of letters or signs present in an abbreviation which are omitted or replaced in the expanded form of the abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*,

@*subtype*) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: add corr del orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: damage handShift mod redo retrace secl supplied surplus undo

   character data

Example

```
    do you <abbr>Mr<am>.</am></abbr> Jones?
```

Example

```
    <choice>
     <abbr>Aug<am>g</am></abbr>
     <expan>Aug<ex>ustorum duo</ex></expan>
    </choice>
```

Example

```
    <abbr>eu<am>
      <g ref="#b-er"/>
     </am>y</abbr>
    <abbr>
     <am>
      <g ref="#b-per"/>
     </am>sone
     </abbr> ...
```

Content model

```
    <content>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <textNode/>
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pPart.transcriptional"/>
   </alternate>
  </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element am
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.pPart.transcriptional )*
}
```

<analytic> (analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication. [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author date editor ptr ref respStmt textLang title

header: availability idno

Note May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order.

The <analytic> element may only occur within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

Example

```
<biblStruct>
 <analytic>
  <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
  <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
 </analytic>
 <monogr>
  <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
  <imprint>
   <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
  </imprint>
  <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
  <biblScope>377-380</biblScope>
 </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="author"/>
      <elementRef key="editor"/>
      <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
      <elementRef key="title"/>
      <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
      <elementRef key="date"/>
      <elementRef key="textLang"/>
      <elementRef key="idno"/>
      <elementRef key="availability"/>
     </alternate>
    </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element analytic
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_author    | tei_editor    | tei_respStmt    | tei_title    | tei_model.ptrLike
}
```

<anchor> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it
corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. Synchronization and Overlap 16.5.
Correspondence and Alignment]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list
listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs
said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language
licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName
settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *xml:id* attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/></s>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element anchor { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.typed.attributes, empty }
```

<annotationBlock> groups together various annotations, e.g. for parallel interpretations of a spoken segment. [8.4.6. Analytic Coding]

Module spoken

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@*who*) att.timed (@*start*, @*end*) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@*dur*)) (att.duration.iso (@*dur-iso*))) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.divPart.spoken

Contained by

core: item note q quote said stage

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: body div epigraph

transcr: metamark

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<annotationBlock who="#SPK1" start="#T2"
 end="#T3" xml:id="ag20">
 <u xml:id="u20">
  <seg xml:id="seg37" type="utterance"
   subtype="modeless">
   <w xml:id="w46">Yeah</w>
  </seg>
 </u>
</annotationBlock>
```

```
<annotationBlock who="#SPK1" start="#T5"
 end="#T6" xml:id="ag21">
 <u xml:id="u21">
  <seg xml:id="seg38" type="utterance"
   subtype="modeless">
   <w xml:id="w47">Mhm</w>
  </seg>
 </u>
</annotationBlock>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="u"/>
  <elementRef key="spanGrp"/>
  <classRef key="model.global.spoken"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element annotationBlock
{
   tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
   tei_att.timed.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( u | spanGrp | tei_model.global.spoken )*
}
```

<app> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more readings or notes on the relevant passage. [«#TCAPEN»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@ana *Status* Optional

   Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.fragId separated by whitespace

   Suggested values include: **#lexical**

   #syntactic

   #morphological

   #ordinal

   #orthographical

   #subtractive

   #additive

@type classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

@from identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.pointer
>
> *Note* This attribute should be used when either the double-end point method of apparatus markup, or the location-referenced method with a URL rather than canonical reference, are used.

@to identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.pointer
>
> *Note* This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, when the encoded apparatus is not embedded *in-line* in the base-text.

@loc (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
>
> *Note* This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used. It supplies a string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem listApp rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: note

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
 <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>
```

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
 <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
 <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
  <lem wit="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La">Ex<g ref="#per"/>iment</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
 <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
  <lem resp="#ed2013">Eriment</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

Example

```
<app loc="1">
 <rdg resp="#SEG">TIMΩΔA</rdg>
</app>
```

Example

```
<app loc="1-6">
 <note>Too badly worn to yield a text</note>
</app>
```

Example

```
<choice xml:id="choice3">
 <reg>σύμπαντα</reg>
 <orig>ΣΙΝΠΑΤΑΝ</orig>
</choice>
<!-- ... -->
<app from="#choice3">
 <note>Mommsen's fanciful normalization, reproduced here, has not been
accepted by all recent editions</note>
</app>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="lem" minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.rdgLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <elementRef key="wit"/>
   <elementRef key="rdgGrp"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element app
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   attribute ana
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "#lexical"
          | "#syntactic"
          | "#morphological"
          | "#ordinal"
          | "#orthographical"
          | "#subtractive"
          | "#additive"
         )+
      }
   }?,
   attribute type { text }?,
   attribute from { text }?,
   attribute to { text }?,
   attribute loc { list { + } }?,
   (
      tei_lem?,
      ( tei_model.rdgLike | tei_model.noteLike | tei_wit | tei_rdgGrp )*
   )
}
```

<application> provides information about an application which has acted upon the document.
[2.3.10. The Application Information Element]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*,

@*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*))

@ident supplies an identifier for the application, independent of its version number or display name.

> *Status* Required
>
> *Datatype* teidata.name

@version supplies a version number for the application, independent of its identifier or display name.

> *Status* Required
>
> *Datatype* teidata.versionNumber

Contained by —

May contain

core: desc label p ptr ref

linking: ab

Example

```
<appInfo>
 <application version="1.5"
  ident="ImageMarkupTool1" notAfter="2006-06-01">
  <label>Image Markup Tool</label>
  <ptr target="#P1"/>
  <ptr target="#P2"/>
 </application>
</appInfo>
```

This example shows an appInfo element documenting the fact that version 1.5 of the Image Markup Tool1 application has an interest in two parts of a document which was last saved on June 6 2006. The parts concerned are accessible at the URLs given as target for the two <ptr> elements.

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element application
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   attribute ident { text },
   attribute version { text },
   ( tei_model.labelLike+, ( tei_model.ptrLike* | tei_model.pLike* ) )
}
```

\<author\> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource.

In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast.

Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
```

```
(1634-1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
 <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
 <persName>John Fletcher</persName></author>
<author>
 <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
     Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network</author>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element author
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: monogr

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

  character data

Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element authority { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

  @status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

      unknown the status of the text is unknown.[Default] Deprecated. The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05.

      restricted the text is not freely available.

Member of model.biblPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

header: publicationStmt

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

header: licence

linking: ab

Note   A consistent format should be adopted

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
```

```
<availability status="free">
 <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
 <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
  <p>The MIT License
       applies to this document.</p>
  <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
  <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
a copy
       of this software and associated documentation files (the
"Software"), to deal
       in the Software without restriction, including without limitation
the rights
       to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense,
and/or sell
       copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software
is
       furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
  <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in
       all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
  <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR
       IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY,
       FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE
       AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR
OTHER
       LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE,
ARISING FROM,
       OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER
DEALINGS IN
       THE SOFTWARE.</p>
 </licence>
</availability>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.availabilityPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element availability
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
```

```
      ( tei_model.availabilityPart | tei_model.pLike )+
}
```

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text. [4.7. Back Matter 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb list listBibl milestone note p pb

figures: figure notatedMusic table

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as back matter and which as front matter, the content models for the <back> and <front> elements are identical.

Example

```
<back>
 <div type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>TO shew the Depravity of human Nature, and how apt the Mind is to be
misled by Trinkets
        and false Appearances, Mrs. Two-Shoes does acknowledge, that after
she became rich, she
        had like to have been, too fond of Money
<!-- .... -->
  </p>
 </div>
<!-- ... -->
 <div type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please;

<!-- ... -->
  </p>
 </div>
 <div type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
```

```
and are sold at Mr
        Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
   <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
<!-- ... -->
   <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
        10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
 </div>
 <div type="advert">
  <head>By the KING's Royal Patent, Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible
and Sun in St.
        Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
   <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c. 2s.
          6d</item>
   <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
<!-- ... -->
  </list>
 </div>
</back>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divBottomPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
```

```
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element back
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      (
         tei_model.frontPart        | tei_model.pLike.front        | tei_model.pLike
      (
         (
            tei_model.div1Like,
            ( tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.div1Like | tei_model.global )*
         )
       | (
            tei_model.divLike,
            ( tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.divLike | tei_model.global )*
         )
      )?,
      (
         tei_model.divBottomPart,
         ( tei_model.divBottomPart | tei_model.global )*
      )?
   )
}
```

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.docStatus (@*status*)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart

Contained by

core: add bibl cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org person personGrp place state

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address author bibl biblScope cb choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp meeting mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg relatedItem respStmt rs series sic soCalled term textLang time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: availability distributor edition extent funder idno principal sponsor

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: depth dim height msIdentifier width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listRelation location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

Example

```
<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale,
    1990)</bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
 <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
 <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
 <publisher>OUP</publisher>
 <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
```

Example

```
<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter"
xml:id="carlin_2003">
 <author>
  <name>
   <surname>Carlin</surname>
       (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>
 </author>,
 <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last
     congrès</title> dans
 <bibl type="monogr">
  <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.
        Tobin</title>, éd.
  <editor>
```

```
  <name>
   <forename>Claire</forename>
   <surname>Carlin</surname>
  </name>
 </editor> et
 <editor>
  <name>
   <forename>Kathleen</forename>
   <surname>Wine</surname>
  </name>
 </editor>,
 <pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
 <publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
 <date when="2003">2003</date>.
 </bibl></bibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.highlighted"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.data"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
  <classRef key="model.segLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.biblPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bibl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.highlighted   | tei_model.pPart.data   | tei_model
}
```

\<biblFull\> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic
citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. Methods of
Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2. The File Description 2.2.7.
The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable
(@*default*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.docStatus (@*status*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg
relatedItem said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation
foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support
surrogates

namesdates: event location org person personGrp place state

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

header: editionStmt extent fileDesc notesStmt profileDesc publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc
titleStmt

Example

```
<biblFull>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
        to the present</title>
  <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
  <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
  <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
 </titleStmt>
 <editionStmt>
  <edition>UK edition</edition>
 </editionStmt>
 <extent>1231 pp</extent>
 <publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
  <date>1990</date>
 </publicationStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
 </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="editionStmt"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
     minOccurs="0"/>
```

```
   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <elementRef key="profileDesc"/>
 </sequence>
</alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblFull
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   (
      (
         (
            tei_titleStmt,
            tei_editionStmt?,
            tei_extent?,
            tei_publicationStmt,
            tei_seriesStmt?,
            tei_notesStmt?
         ),
         tei_sourceDesc*
      )
   | ( tei_fileDesc, tei_profileDesc )
   )
}
```

<biblScope> (scope of bibliographic reference) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of page numbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work. [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.citing (*@unit*, *@from*, *@to*)

Member of model.imprintPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint monogr series

header: seriesStmt

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   When a single page is being cited, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is provided, the *from* attribute may be used without *to*; for example a citation such as 'p. 3ff' might be encoded `<biblScope from="3">p. 2ff<biblScope>`.

It is now considered good practice to supply this element as a sibling (rather than a child) of <imprint>, since it supplies information which does not constitute part of the imprint.

Example

```
<biblScope>pp 12–34</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page" from="12" to="34"/>
<biblScope unit="volume">II</biblScope>
<biblScope unit="page">12</biblScope>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblScope
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.citing.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<biblStruct\> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable
(@*default*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.docStatus (@*status*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg
relatedItem said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation
foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures source
summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org person personGrp place state

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: analytic citedRange monogr note ptr ref relatedItem series

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<biblStruct>
 <monogr>
  <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
  <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
  <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
       to the present</title>
  <edition>first edition</edition>
  <imprint>
   <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
   <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
   <date>1990</date>
  </imprint>
 </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="analytic" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="monogr"/>
   <elementRef key="series" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
   <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
   <elementRef key="citedRange"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
  </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element biblStruct
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   (
      tei_analytic*,
      ( tei_monogr, tei_series* )+,
      (
         tei_model.noteLike      | tei_model.ptrLike      | tei_relatedItem      | tei
      )
}
```

<binaryObject> provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic, audio, video or other object. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.media (@*width*, @*height*, @*scale*) (att.internetMedia (@*mimeType*)) att.timed (@*start*, @*end*) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@*dur*)) (att.duration.iso (@*dur-iso*))) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

@encoding The encoding used to encode the binary data. If not specified, this is assumed to be Base64.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surplus zone

May contain Character data only

Example

```
<binaryObject mimeType="image/gif">
R0lGODdhMAAwAPAAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAAwAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
    GHhSWpjQu5yqmCYsapyuvUUlvONmOZtfzgFzByTB10QgxOR0TqBQejhRNzOfkVJ
    +5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLiOSpa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cxOnK
    PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeGl9i2icVqaNVailT6F5iJ90m6
    mvuTS4OK05M0vDk0Q4XUtwvKOzrcd3iq9uisF81M1OIcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
    Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hhx4dbgYKAAA7</binaryObject>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element binaryObject
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.media.attributes,
   tei_att.timed.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute encoding { list { + } }?,
   text
}
```

\<binding\> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.xTruthValue

   Note The value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown

Contained by msdescription: bindingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: condition decoNote

Example

```
<binding contemporary="true">
 <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of
a fore edge clasp
     closing to the back cover.</p>
</binding>
```

Example

```
<bindingDesc>
 <binding contemporary="false">
  <p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker
on the front
      pastedown.</p>
 </binding>
 <binding contemporary="false">
  <p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</p>
 </binding>
</bindingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <elementRef key="condition"/>
  <elementRef key="decoNote"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element binding
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   attribute contemporary { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike | tei_condition | tei_decoNote )+
}
```

<bindingDesc> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <binding> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [10.7.3.1. Binding Descriptions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: binding condition decoNote

Example

```
<bindingDesc>
 <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over
     19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather
with
     gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each
     cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in
     gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the
     spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured
     endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p>
</bindingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <elementRef key="decoNote"/>
   <elementRef key="condition"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="binding" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bindingDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( ( tei_model.pLike | tei_decoNote | tei_condition )+ | tei_binding+ )
}
```

<birth> contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Member of model.personPart

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

Example

```
<birth when="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,
   early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date></birth>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element birth
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<bloc> contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of two or more nation states or countries. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module   namesdates

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming

(@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.datable
(@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*))
(att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom
(@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*,
@*datingMethod*))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol
signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName
settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
<bloc type="union">the European Union</bloc>
<bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element bloc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<body>
 <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
 <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
 <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
```

```
<l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
<l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
<l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
<l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
<l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
<l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
<trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.common"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
    <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
         maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.global"/>
         <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
       </sequence>
       <sequence minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="unbounded">
        <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
        <alternate minOccurs="0"
         maxOccurs="unbounded">
         <classRef key="model.global"/>
         <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
        </alternate>
       </sequence>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element body
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_model.divTop, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divTop )* )?,
      ( tei_model.divGenLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )?,
      (
         ( tei_model.divLike, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
       | ( tei_model.div1Like, ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )* )+
       | (
            ( tei_model.common, tei_model.global* )+,
            (
               (
                  tei_model.divLike,
                  ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
               )+
             | (
                  tei_model.div1Like,
                  ( tei_model.global | tei_model.divGenLike )*
               )+
            )?
         )
      ),
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: m pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The *type* attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

Example

```
<phr>
 <c>M</c>
 <c>O</c>
 <c>A</c>
 <c>I</c>
 <w>doth</w>
 <w>sway</w>
 <w>my</w>
 <w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element c
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
```

```
        tei_att.typed.attributes,
        tei_macro.xtext}
```

<cRefPattern> (canonical reference pattern) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration 2.3.6.2. Search-and-Replace Method]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.patternReplacement (*@matchPattern*, *@replacementPattern*)

Contained by

header: refsDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the *cRef* attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

Example

```
<cRefPattern matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+)\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
 replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='book'][@n='$1']/div[@type='chap'][@n='$2']/div[@typ
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cRefPattern
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.patternReplacement.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike*
}
```

<calendar> describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text. [2.4.5. Calendar Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

Contained by

header: calendarDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
 <calendar xml:id="julianEngland">
  <p>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</p>
 </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
 <calendar xml:id="egyptian"
  target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar">
  <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
 </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element calendar
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

\<calendarDesc\> (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.4.5. Calendar Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: calendar

Note   In the first example above, calendars and short codes for *xml:id*s are from W3 guidelines at **??**ttp://www.w3.org/TR/xpath-functions-11/#lang-cal-country

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AD">
  <p>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AH">
  <p>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AME">
  <p>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AM">
  <p>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AP">
  <p>Anno Persici</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_AS">
  <p>Aji Saka Era (Java)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_BE">
  <p>Buddhist Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_CB">
  <p>Cooch Behar Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_CE">
  <p>Common Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_CL">
  <p>Chinese Lunar Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_CS">
  <p>Chula Sakarat Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_EE">
  <p>Ethiopian Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_FE">
  <p>Fasli Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_ISO">
  <p>ISO 8601 calendar</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_JE">
  <p>Japanese Calendar</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_KE">
  <p>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_KY">
  <p>Kali Yuga</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_ME">
  <p>Malabar Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_MS">
  <p>Monarchic Solar Era</p>
 </calendar>
 <calendar xml:id="cal_NS">
  <p>Nepal Samwat Era</p>
 </calendar>
```

```
      <calendar xml:id="cal_OS">
       <p>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_RS">
       <p>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_SE">
       <p>Saka Era</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_SH">
       <p>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_SS">
       <p>Saka Samvat</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_TE">
       <p>Tripurabda Era</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_VE">
       <p>Vikrama Era</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_VS">
       <p>Vikrama Samvat Era</p>
      </calendar>
     </calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
     <calendarDesc>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Gregorian">
       <p>Gregorian calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Julian">
       <p>Julian calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Islamic">
       <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Hebrew">
       <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Revolutionary">
       <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Iranian">
       <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Coptic">
       <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p>
      </calendar>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Chinese">
       <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
      </calendar>
     </calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
     <calendarDesc>
      <calendar xml:id="cal_Egyptian"
       target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar">
       <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
```

```
    </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="calendar" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element calendarDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_calendar+ }
```

\<catDesc\> (category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal \<textDesc\>. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: category

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Example

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

Example

```
<catDesc>
 <textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
```

```
        </textDesc>
      </catDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.catDescPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.catDescPart )*
}
```

<catRef> (category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

    @scheme identifies the classification scheme within which the set of categories concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other resource.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by imprint

header: textClass

May contain Empty element

Note The *scheme* attribute needs to be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared.

Example

```
<catRef scheme="#myTopics"
 target="#news #prov #sales2"/>
<!-- elsewhere -->
<taxonomy xml:id="myTopics">
 <category xml:id="news">
  <catDesc>Newspapers</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="prov">
  <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
```

```
    </category>
    <category xml:id="sales2">
     <catDesc>Low to average annual sales</catDesc>
    </category>
   </taxonomy>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element catRef
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   empty
}
```

\<catchwords\> describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunable, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core:	abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures:	figure notatedMusic
gaiji:	g
header:	idno
linking:	anchor join link linkGrp seg
msdescription:	catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates:	addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname
textcrit:	app witDetail
transcr:	addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
	character data

Example

```
<catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along
    the inner bounding line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords>
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc" role="nonfatal">WARNING: deprecated use of element — The <sch:name/> element will not be allowed outside of msDesc as of 2018-10-01.</sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element catchwords { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<category> contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: category taxonomy

May contain

core: desc gloss

header: catDesc category

Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">
 <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">
 <catDesc>Prose </catDesc>
 <category xml:id="b11">
  <catDesc>journalism</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="b12">
  <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
 </category>
</category>
```

Example

```
<category xml:id="LIT">
 <catDesc xml:lang="pl">literatura piękna</catDesc>
 <catDesc xml:lang="en">fiction</catDesc>
 <category xml:id="LPROSE">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">proza</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">prose</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="LPOETRY">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">poezja</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">poetry</catDesc>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="LDRAMA">
  <catDesc xml:lang="pl">dramat</catDesc>
  <catDesc xml:lang="en">drama</catDesc>
 </category>
</category>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="catDesc" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="category" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element category
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_catDesc+ | ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.glossLike )* ),
      tei_category*
```

```
        )
}
```

<cb> (column break) marks the beginning of a new column of a text on a multi-column page. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note On this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. The <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
 <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
```

```
         sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
         or to prepare one</sense>.</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
 <sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
 <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
        containing five Chaldron</sense>.</entryFree>
<entryFree>
 <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
        Sea-Fishes</sense>.</entryFree>
```

Content model

Schema Declaration

```
element cb
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.edition.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<cell> contains one cell of a table. [«#FTTAB1»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))
att.tableDecoration (*@role*, *@rows*, *@cols*)

Contained by

figures: row

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email
emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure
measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said
sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent
listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region
roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<row>
 <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
 <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
     and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cell
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<certainty> indicates the degree of certainty associated with some aspect of the text markup.
[21.1.2. Structured Indications of Uncertainty]

Module   certainty

Attributes   Attributes att.scoping (@*target*, @*match*) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base,
@xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp,
@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana)
att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (~~cert~~, @resp)
att.global.source (@source)

@cert   (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the object pointed to
by the <certainty> element.

Derived from   att.global.responsibility

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.certainty

@locus   indicates more exactly the aspect concerning which certainty is being
expressed: specifically, whether the markup is correctly located, whether the correct
element or attribute name has been used, or whether the content of the element or
attribute is correct, etc.

Status   Required

Datatype   teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **name**   uncertainty concerns whether the name of the element
or attribute used is correctly applied.

start   uncertainty concerns whether the start of the element is correctly
identified.

end uncertainty concerns whether the end of the element is correctly identified.

location uncertainty concerns both the start and the end of the element.

value uncertainty concerns the content (for an element) or the value (for an attribute)

@assertedValue provides an alternative value for the aspect of the markup in question—an alternative generic identifier, transcription, or attribute value, or the identifier of an <anchor> element (to indicate an alternative starting or ending location). If an *assertedValue* is given, the confidence level specified by *degree* applies to the alternative markup specified by *assertedValue*; if none is given, it applies to the markup in the text.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.word

```
<certainty target="#ESX"
 locus="name"
 assertedValue="placeName"
 cert="low">
 <desc>It is unlikely, but possible, that this refers to the place
     rather than the person.</desc>
</certainty>
```

Note This attribute makes it possible to indicate the degree of confidence in a specific alternative to some aspect of the markup. In the first example above the encoder is expressing the likelihood (.2) that the generic identifier should be <placeName> rather than <persName>, which is the coded element.

@given indicates one or more element(s) characterizing the conditions which are assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidenceconditions assumed in the assignment of a degree of confidence.

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The envisioned typical value of this attribute would be the identifier of another <certainty> element or a list of such identifiers. It may thus be possible to construct probability networks by chaining <certainty> elements together. Such networks would ultimately be grounded in unconditional <certainty> elements (with no value for *given*). The semantics of this chaining would be understood in this way: if a <certainty> element is specified, via a reference, as the assumption, then it is not the attribution of uncertainty that is the assumption, but rather the assertion itself. For instance, in the example above, the first <certainty> element indicates that the confidence in the identification of the new scribe as *msm*. The second indicates the degree of confidence that *Essex* is a personal name, given that the new scribe is *msm*. Note that the given in the second <certainty> element is not the assertion that the likelihood that msm is the new scribe is 0.6, but simply the assertion that msm is the new scribe; this is a recommended convention to facilitate building networks.

The ambitious encoder may wish to attempt complex networks or probability assertions, experimenting with references to other elements or prose assertions, and deploying feature structure connectives such as <alt>, <join>, and <note>. However, we do not believe that the

<certainty> element gives, at this time, a comprehensive ambiguity-free system for indicating certainty.

@degree indicates the degree of confidence assigned to the aspect of the markup named by the *locus* attribute.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.probability

Member of model.certLike model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: interp m phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gap gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab join seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc space substJoin supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Example (For discussion of this example, see section CEconcon)

```
Ernest went to <anchor xml:id="A1"/> old
<persName xml:id="SYB">Saybrook</persName>.

<certainty xml:id="c1" target="#SYB"
 locus="name" degree="0.6"/>
<certainty target="#SYB" locus="start"
 given="#c1" degree="0.9"/>
<certainty xml:id="C-c2" target="#SYB"
 locus="name" assertedValue="persName" degree="0.4"/>
<certainty target="#SYB" locus="start"
 given="#C-c2" degree="0.5"/>
<certainty target="#SYB" locus="start"
 assertedValue="#a1" given="#c1" degree="0.5"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
```

```
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element certainty
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.scoping.attributes,
   attribute cert { text }?,
   attribute locus { "name" | "start" | "end" | "location" | "value" },
   attribute assertedValue { text }?,
   attribute given { list { + } }?,
   attribute degree { text }?,
   ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source
   document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.4.1.
   Creation 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (*@who*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*,
   @notBefore, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*,
   @from-iso, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*,
   @from-custom, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.docStatus (*@status*) att.global
   (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*,
   @rendition)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
   @select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))
   (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

   @target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.
      Status Optional

140

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by: *header:* listChange revisionDesc

msdescription: recordHist

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The *who* attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a <respStmt> or <person> element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it.

It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The *status* attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

Example

```
<titleStmt>
 <title> ... </title>
 <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
 <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
  <resp>copy editing</resp>
  <name>Brett Zamir</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02"
  status="public">Finished chapter 23</change>
 <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02"
  status="draft">Finished chapter 2</change>
 <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21"
  who="#LDB">Added examples to section 3</change>
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT2"
    notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
         using green ink</change>
   <change xml:id="DRAFT3"
    notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as
         supplied to printer.</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element change
{
   tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc

gaiji: glyph

Example

```
<charDecl>
 <char xml:id="aENL">
  <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
  <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
```

<charProp>

```
    </char>
  </charDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="char"/>
  <elementRef key="glyph"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element charDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_desc?, ( char | tei_glyph )+ )
}
```

<charProp> (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

gaiji: glyph

May contain

gaiji: localName value

Note If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specied by means of a <localName>.

At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

Example

```
<charProp>
 <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
 <value>circle</value>
</charProp>
<charProp>
 <localName>daikanwa</localName>
 <value>36</value>
</charProp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="unicodeName"/>
   <elementRef key="localName"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="value"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element charProp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( ( unicodeName | tei_localName ), tei_value )
}
```

\<choice\> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4. Simple Editorial Changes]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

linking: seg

transcr: am ex supplied

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel.

Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. The Apparatus Entry, Readings, and Witnesses should be preferred.

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
   articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
   meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
 </choice> of our subjects,
   with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
  <choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
 </choice>.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.choicePart"/>
  <elementRef key="choice"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element choice
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.choicePart | tei_choice )*
}
```

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 9.3.5.1. Examples]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note pb ptr q quote ref said

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: biblFull

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<cit>
 <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
     as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
 <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
 <form>
  <orth>horrifier</orth>
 </form>
 <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
  <quote>to horrify</quote>
 </cit>
 <cit type="example">
  <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
   <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
  </cit>
 </cit>
</entry>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
```

```
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.qLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.egLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.entryPart"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element cit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.qLike    | tei_model.egLike    | tei_model.biblLike    | tei_model.ptrLik
}
```

<citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.5. Scopes and Ranges in Bibliographic Citations]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.citing (*@unit*, *@from*, *@to*)

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

147

Note   When the range cited consists of a single page or other unit, use the *from* and *to* attributes with
an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *from* attribute should be used without
to. For example, if the citation has 'p. 3ff' as a page reference.

Example

```
<citedRange>pp 12-13</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="page" from="12" to="13"/>
<citedRange unit="volume">II</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="page">12</citedRange>
```

Example

```
<bibl>
 <ptr target="#mueller01"/>,
<citedRange target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.
    4-5</citedRange></bibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element citedRange
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.citing.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<classCode\> (classification code) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module   header

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@scheme   identifies the classification system in use, as defined by, e.g. a <taxonomy>
element, or some other resource.
Status   Required
Datatype   teidata.pointer

Contained by   imprint
header: textClass
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
certainty: certainty precision
core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb
measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time
title

<classDecl>

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin character data

Example

```
<classCode scheme="http://www.udc.org">410</classCode>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element classCode
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text },
   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<classDecl> (classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: taxonomy

Example

```
<classDecl>
 <taxonomy xml:id="LCSH">
  <bibl>Library of Congress Subject Headings</bibl>
 </taxonomy>
</classDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
```

```
   <keywords scheme="#LCSH">
    <term>Political science</term>
    <term>United States -- Politics and government —
         Revolution, 1775-1783</term>
   </keywords>
  </textClass>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="taxonomy" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element classDecl { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_taxonomy+ }
```

<collation> contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<collation>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf,
    conjoint with the pastedown.</collation>
```

Example

```
<collation>
 <p>
  <formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text)
        7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula>
  <catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center
        or towards the right lower margin in various manners:
        in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red
        ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals);
        quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames;
        quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text;
        quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in
        cursive hand.</catchwords>
 </p>
</collation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element collation { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<collection> contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
 <country>USA</country>
 <region>California</region>
 <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
 <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
 <collection>Ellesmere</collection>
```

```
  <idno>El 26 C 9</idno>
  <msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName>
</msIdentifier>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element collection
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

\<colophon\> contains the *colophon* of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini
   1447.</colophon>
```

Example

```
<colophon>Explicit expliceat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon>
```

Example

```
<colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno
    domini Millessimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo
    sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur
    libellus iste.</colophon>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element colophon { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<condition> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript. [10.7.1.5. Condition]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

msdescription: binding bindingDesc sealDesc supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
     secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

     character data

Example

```
<condition>
 <p>There are lacunae in three places in this
     manuscript. After 14v two
     leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine.
After
     68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of
8 leaves
     has been lost. </p>
 <p>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a
     irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of
full
     length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears
on fol.
     2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v,
32r-35v,
     37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v,
70r-v,
     74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On
fol. 98
     the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition
due to
     moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or
     wrinkled. </p>
 <p>The script has been
     touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the
following
     fols. was done by
  <name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r,
     6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,.
An
     AM-note says according to the lawman
  <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the
     touching up was done by himself and another lawman
  <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>.
  <name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up
     on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v.
  <name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the
     touching up in the section 36r-59r containing
  <title>Bretasögur</title></p>
</condition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element condition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.
     [3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected,
<corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,
Juan. It's so far in the past now — how <corr>can we</corr> prove
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected
reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now —
how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element corr
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<correction> (correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have
been made in the text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable
Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable
(@*default*)

@status indicates the degree of correction applied to the text.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Legal values are: **high** the text has been thoroughly checked and proofread.

        medium the text has been checked at least once.

        low the text has not been checked.

        unknown the correction status of the text is unknown.[Default]
            Deprecated. The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05.

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate corrections within the text.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Legal values are: **silent** corrections have been made silently[Default]

> **markup** corrections have been represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section 3.4. Simple Editorial Changes.

Example

```
<correction>
 <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the WordPerfect spelling
checker, with a user
      defined dictionary of 500 extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth
Century
      Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element correction
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
   attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<correspAction> (correspondence action) contains a structured description of the place, the name of a person/organization and the date related to the sending/receiving of a message or any other action related to the correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.typed (~~type~~, @*subtype*)

@type describes the nature of the action.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **sent** information concerning the sending or dispatch of a message.

> **received** information concerning the receipt of a message.
>
> **transmitted** information concerning the transmission of a message, i.e. between the dispatch and the next receipt, redirect or forwarding.
>
> **redirected** information concerning the redirection of an unread message.
>
> **forwarded** information concerning the forwarding of a message.

Member of model.correspDescPart

Contained by

header: correspDesc

May contain

core: address date email name note p rs time

header: idno

linking: ab

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

Example

```
<correspAction type="sent">
 <persName>Adelbert von Chamisso</persName>
 <settlement>Vertus</settlement>
 <date when="1807-01-29"/>
</correspAction>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.correspActionPart"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element correspAction
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "sent" | "received" | "transmitted" | "redirected" | "forwarded"
   }?,
   ( tei_model.correspActionPart+ | tei_model.pLike+ )
}
```

<correspContext> (correspondence context) provides references to preceding or following correspondence related to this piece of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.correspDescPart

Contained by

header: correspDesc

May contain

core: note p ptr ref

linking: ab

Example

```
<correspContext>
 <ptr type="next" subtype="toAuthor"
  target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief101Varnhagenan
 <ptr type="prev" subtype="fromAuthor"
  target="http://tei.ibi.hu-berlin.de/berliner-intellektuelle/manuscript?Brief103BoeckhanVar
</correspContext>
```

Example

```
<correspContext>
 <ref type="prev"
  target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A040962"> Previous letter of
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
  <date when="1816-12-30">December 30, 1816</date></ref>
 <ref type="next"
  target="http://weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041003"> Next letter of
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
  <date when="1817-01-05">January 5, 1817</date></ref>
</correspContext>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.correspContextPart"
  minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element correspContext
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_model.correspContextPart+
}
```

<correspDesc> (correspondence description) contains a description of the actions related to
one act of correspondence. [2.4.6. Correspondence Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.declarable (*@default*) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*) att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*,
@xml:lang, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*))

(att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*))
(att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*))
(att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: note p

header: correspAction correspContext

linking: ab

Example

```
<correspDesc>
 <correspAction type="sent">
  <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
  <settlement>Dresden</settlement>
  <date when="1817-06-23">23 June 1817</date>
 </correspAction>
 <correspAction type="received">
  <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>
  <settlement>Prag</settlement>
 </correspAction>
 <correspContext>
  <ref type="prev"
   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041209">Previous letter of
   <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName>
       to <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
   <date from="1817-06-19" to="1817-06-20">June 19/20, 1817</date></ref>
  <ref type="next"
   target="http://www.weber-gesamtausgabe.de/A041217">Next letter of
   <persName>Carl Maria von Weber</persName> to
   <persName>Caroline Brandt</persName>:
   <date when="1817-06-27">June 27, 1817</date></ref>
 </correspContext>
</correspDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.correspDescPart"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element correspDesc
{
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( tei_model.correspDescPart+ | tei_model.pLike+ )
}
```

\<country\> contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

Example

```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element country
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<creation> contains information about the creation of a text. [2.4.1. Creation 2.4. The Profile
Description]

Module   header

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable
(*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))
(att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom
(*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*,
@datingMethod))

Member of   model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: abbr address choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi measure measureGrp
mentioned name num ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

header: idno listChange

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Note   The <creation> element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest.

It may also contain a more structured account of the various stages or revisions associated with the evolution of a text; this should be encoded using the <listChange> element. It should not be confused with the <publicationStmt> element, which records date and place of publication.

Example

```
<creation>
 <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

Example

```
<creation>
 <date when="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element creation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_listChange )*
}
```

<custEvent> (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript. [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: custodialHist

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec
1964</date></custEvent>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element custEvent
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events. [10.9.1.2. Availability and Custodial History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: custEvent

Example

```
<custodialHist>
 <custEvent type="conservation"
  notBefore="1961-03" notAfter="1963-02">Conserved between March 1961 and
February 1963 at
      Birgitte Dalls Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent>
 <custEvent type="photography"
  notBefore="1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-05-30">Photographed in
      May 1988 by AMI/FA.</custEvent>
 <custEvent type="transfer-dispatch"
  notBefore="1989-11-13" notAfter="1989-11-13">Dispatched to Iceland
      13 November 1989.</custEvent>
</custodialHist>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="custEvent" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element custodialHist
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_custEvent+ )
}
```

<damage> contains an area of damage to the text witness. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.damaged (@*agent*, @*degree*, @*group*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) (att.written (@*hand*))

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   Since damage to text witnesses frequently makes them harder to read, the <damage> element will often contain an <unclear> element. If the damaged area is not continuous (e.g. a stain affecting several strings of text), the *group* attribute may be used to group together several related <damage> elements; alternatively the <join> element may be used to indicate which <damage> and <unclear> elements are part of the same physical phenomenon.

The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied

in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

Example

```
<l>The Moving Finger wri<damage agent="water" group="1">es; and</damage>
having writ,</l>
<l>Moves <damage agent="water" group="1">
  <supplied>on: nor all your</supplied>
 </damage> Piety nor Wit</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element damage
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.damaged.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times 2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.6. The Revision Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 15.2.3. The Setting Description 13.3.6. Dates and Times]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.duration (att.duration.w3c (*@dur*)) (att.duration.iso (*@dur-iso*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

   character data

Example

```
<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>
```

Example

```
Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
   of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and
Seventy-seven of the Republic
   the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the
Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

Example

```
<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element date
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.duration.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
}
```

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2. Openers and Closers]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

textstructure: body div front group

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docDate

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
      character data

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
 <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
 <closer>
  <dateline>
   <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
   <date>1914-1921</date>
  </dateline>
 </closer>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element dateline
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike   | tei_model.phrase   | tei_model.global   | tei_docDate   )*
}
```

<death> contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Member of model.personPart

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<death when="1902-10-01"/>
```

Example

```
<death when="1960-12-10">Passed away near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cerebral
palsy. </death>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element death
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<decoDesc> (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript,
either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organized <decoNote>
elements. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and Additional Material]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: decoNote summary

Example

```
<decoDesc>
 <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated
     illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with
red
     penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials;
verses
     with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p>
</decoDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="decoNote" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element decoDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_summary?, tei_decoNote+ ) )
}
```

<decoNote> (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a
manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [10.7.3. Bindings, Seals, and
Additional Material]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: binding bindingDesc decoDesc msItem msItemStruct seal sealDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<decoDesc>
 <decoNote type="initial">
  <p>The start of each book of the Bible with
       a 10-line historiated illuminated initial;
       prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials
       with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by
       3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,
       alternately blue or red.</p>
 </decoNote>
</decoDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element decoNote
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<del\> (deletion) contains a letter, word, or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, or a previous annotator or corrector. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl subst supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it (unless it is restored in a <supplied> tag). Illegible or lost text within a deletion may be marked using the <gap> tag to signal that text is present but has not been transcribed, or is no longer visible. Attributes on the <gap> element may be used to indicate how much text is omitted, the reason for omitting it, etc. If text is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence in a similar way.

Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read, or whether a deletion was intended may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility).

There is a clear distinction in the TEI between <del> and <surplus> on the one hand and <gap> or <unclear> on the other. <del> indicates a deletion present in the source being transcribed, which states the author's or a later scribe's intent to cancel or remove text. <surplus> indicates material present in the source being transcribed which should have been so deleted, but which is not in fact. <gap> or <unclear>, by contrast, signal an editor's or encoder's decision to omit something or their inability to read the source text. See sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for the relationship between these and other related elements used in detailed transcription.

Example

```
<l>
 <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
<del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del>
   weht der Wind</l>
```

Example

```
<del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
  unit="character"/>
</del>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element del
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<delSpan> (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [11.3.1.4. Additions and Deletions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.spanning (@*spanTo*)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note   Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <delSpan> element, the ending by the target of the *spanTo* attribute.

The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the *reason* attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription and, for the close association of the <delSpan> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination.

The <delSpan> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

Example

```
<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
   portion <delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted
   portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
   paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
   the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>
```

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">The @spanTo attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element delSpan
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<depth> contains a measurement measured across the spine of a book or codex, or (for other text-bearing objects) perpendicular to the measurement given by the 'width' element. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material

       musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

       character data

Note   If used to specify the width of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the 'width' axis.

Example

```
<depth unit="in" quantity="4"/>
```

Content model   `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element depth
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

\<desc\> (description) contains a brief description of the object documented by its parent element, typically a documentation element or an entity. [22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.translatable (*@versionDate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.descLike model.labelLike

Contained by

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: add corr del desc emph gap graphic head hi item l lg media meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

gaiji: charDecl glyph

header: application category change handNote licence rendition schemaRef scriptNote tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab join seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org place relation state

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl space substJoin supplied surface surplus

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Note When used in a specification element such as <elementSpec>, TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, begining with an active verb.

Example

```
<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and intended use of a
documentation element, or a brief characterisation of a parent entity
</desc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element desc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.translatable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.limitedContent}
```

<dim> contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*,

(*@subtype*) att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note   The specific elements <width>, <height>, and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate.

Example

```
<dim type="circumference" extent="4.67 in"/>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element dim
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

<dimensions> contains a dimensional specification. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.dimensions

(*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

@type indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Sample values include:* **leaves** dimensions relate to one or more leaves (e.g. a single leaf, a gathering, or a separately bound part)
>
>> **ruled** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been ruled in preparation for writing.
>>
>> **pricked** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been pricked out in preparation for ruling (used where this differs significantly from the ruled area, or where the ruling is not measurable).
>>
>> **written** dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been written, with the height measured from the top of the minims on the top line of writing, to the bottom of the minims on the bottom line of writing.
>>
>> **miniatures** dimensions relate to the miniatures within the manuscript
>>
>> **binding** dimensions relate to the binding in which the codex or manuscript is contained
>>
>> **box** dimensions relate to the box or other container in which the manuscript is stored.

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

msdescription: depth dim height width

Note Contains no more than one of each of the specialized elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification.

Example

```
<dimensions type="leaves">
 <height scope="range">157-160</height>
 <width>105</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
 <height scope="most">90</height>
 <width scope="most">48</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
 <height>12</height>
 <width>10</width>
</dimensions>
```

Example This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:

```
<dimensions type="panels">
 <height scope="all">7004</height>
 <width scope="all">1803</width>
 <dim type="relief" unit="mm">345</dim>
</dimensions>
```

This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm.

Example When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the *quantity* attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:

```
<dimensions type="leaves">
 <height scope="range">157-160</height>
 <width quantity="105"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
 <height unit="cm" scope="most"
  quantity="90"/>
 <width unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="48"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
 <height quantity="12"/>
 <width quantity="10"/>
</dimensions>
```

Schematron <s:report test="count(tei:width)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:depth)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="dim"/>
  <classRef key="model.dimLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element dimensions
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
    tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
    attribute type { text }?,
    ( tei_dim | tei_model.dimLike )*
}
```

<distinct> identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage.
[3.3.2.3. Other Linguistically Distinct Material]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

 @type specifies the sublanguage or register to which the word or phrase is being assigned
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.enumerated

 @time specifies how the phrase is distinct diachronically
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.text

 @space specifies how the phrase is distinct diatopically
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.text

 @social specifies how the phrase is distinct diastratically
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.text

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
Next morning a boy
in that dormitory confided to his bosom friend, a
<distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of
Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which King
<distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct>
keep secret.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element distinct
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   attribute time { text }?,
   attribute space { text }?,
   attribute social { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<distributor\> supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a
text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element distributor { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<district> contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))

(att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<placeName>
 <district type="ward">Jericho</district>
```

```
   <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
</placeName>
```

Example

```
<placeName>
 <district type="area">South Side</district>
 <settlement>Chicago</settlement>
</placeName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element district
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1. Divisions of the Body]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.divLike (*@org*, *@sample*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.written (*@hand*) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type *Status* Required

Legal values are: **introduction** to contain introductory material

sources to contain documentation of source texts

apparatus to contain apparatus criticus or textual notes

bibliography to contain bibliographical information, previous publications, etc.

commentary to contain all editorial commentary, historical/prosopographical discussion, etc.

edition to contain the text of the edition itself; may include multiple text-parts

section A subordinate part of the introduction or other section, but not the edition of translation.

textpart used to divide a div[type=edition] into multiple parts (fragments, columns, faces, etc.)

translation to contain a translation of the text into one or more modern languages

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc divGen gap gb head index l label lb lg list listBibl meeting
milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="part">
  <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
  <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
        exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
  <div n="1" type="chapter">
   <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
   <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
           happiness of the greatest number [...]</p>
   <div n="1.1" type="section">
    <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
            authority [...] </p>
   </div>
   <div n="1.2" type="section">
    <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
    <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when [...]
</p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </div>
</body>
```

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain
higher-level structural elements such as div. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab and not(ancestor::tei:floatingText)">
Abstract model violation: p and ab may not contain higher-level structural elements such as
div. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
       <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.common"/>
       <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <alternate minOccurs="1"
        maxOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.divGenLike"/>
       </alternate>
       <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element div
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.divLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "introduction"
    | "sources"
    | "apparatus"
    | "bibliography"
    | "commentary"
    | "edition"
```

189

```
      | "section"
      | "textpart"
      | "translation"
   },
   (
      ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global )*,
      (
         (
            ( ( tei_model.divLike | tei_model.divGenLike ), tei_model.global* )+
          | (
               ( tei_model.common, tei_model.global* )+,
               (
                  ( tei_model.divLike | tei_model.divGenLike ),
                  tei_model.global*
               )*
            )
         ),
         ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
      )?
   )
}
```

\<divGen\> (automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear. [3.8.2. Index Entries]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

   @type   specifies what type of generated text division (e.g. index, table of contents, etc.) is to appear.

   Status   Optional

   Datatype   teidata.enumerated

   Sample values include: **index**   an index is to be generated and inserted at this point.

   toc   a table of contents

   figlist   a list of figures

   tablist   a list of tables

   Note   Valid values are application-dependent; those shown are of obvious utility in document production, but are by no means exhaustive.

Member of   model.divGenLike model.frontPart

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: head

Note   This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

Example   One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the

indexName attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```
<back>
 <div1 type="backmat">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
<!-- ... -->
 </div1>
 <div1 type="backmat">
  <head>Indices</head>
  <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
  <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
 </div1>
</back>
```

Example Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```
<front>
<!--<titlePage>...</titlePage>-->
 <divGen type="toc"/>
 <div>
  <head>Preface</head>
  <p> ... </p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.headLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element divGen
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   tei_model.headLike*
}
```

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body div front group

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not. It should be used only for the author(s) of the entire document, not for author(s) of any subset or part of it. (Attributions of authorship of a subset or part of the document, for example of a chapter in a textbook or an article in a newspaper, may be encoded with <byline> without <docAuthor>.)

Example

```
<titlePage>
 <docTitle>
  <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
       Parts.</titlePart>
 </docTitle>
 <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
     and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docAuthor
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given on a title page or in a dateline. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Note For simple dates, the *when* attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body dateline div docImprint front group

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications. It should be used only for the date of the entire document, not for any subset or part of it.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate></docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docDate
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute when { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<docEdition\> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Cf. the \<edition\> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

Example

```
      <docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docEdition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
```

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr pubPlace publisher ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docDate

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
 <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
   Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
   at
<pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
<name>J. Roberts</name> in
<pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
<name>A. Dodd</name> without
<pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
   and <name>J. Graves</name> in
<pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
<date>1722.</date></docImprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <elementRef key="pubPlace"/>
  <elementRef key="docDate"/>
  <elementRef key="publisher"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.phrase    | tei_pubPlace    | tei_docDate    | tei_p
}
```

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<docTitle>
 <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
 <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="titlePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   ( tei_model.global*, ( titlePart, tei_model.global* )+ )
}
```

<edition> describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2. The Edition Statement]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

197

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date></edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element edition { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

\<editionStmt\> (edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text. [2.2.2.
The Edition Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting p respStmt

header: edition funder principal sponsor

linking: ab

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>Adapted by </resp>
```

```
   <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
 </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

Example

```
<editionStmt>
 <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date></p>
</editionStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="edition"/>
   <classRef key="model.respLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editionStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_edition, tei_model.respLike* ) )
}
```

\<editor\> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note A consistent format should be adopted.

Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editor
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<editorialDecl\> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals

linking: ab

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
 <normalization>
  <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
   </p>
 </normalization>
 <quotation marks="all">
  <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
 </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.editorialDeclPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike | tei_model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

\<email\> (electronic mail address) contains an email address identifying a location to which email messages can be delivered. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.addressLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

   character data

Note   The format of a modern Internet email address is defined in RFC 2822

Example

```
<email>membership@tei-c.org</email>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element email { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!
```

Example

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.
<q>
 <emph>What
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element emph { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic
text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. The Encoding Description
2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: p

gaiji: charDecl

header: classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl
schemaRef styleDefDecl tagsDecl

linking: ab

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: variantEncoding

Example

```
<encodingDesc>
 <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>
</encodingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.encodingDescPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.encodingDescPart | tei_model.pLike )+
}
```

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a
section or on a title page. [4.2.3. Arguments, Epigraphs, and Postscripts 4.2. Elements
Common to All Divisions 4.6. Title Pages]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

figures: figure table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body div front group

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit desc gap gb index l label lb lg list listBibl milestone note p pb q quote
said sp stage

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

205

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
 <cit>
  <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
  <quote>
   <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
   <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
  </quote>
 </cit>
</epigraph>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element epigraph
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.common | tei_model.global )*
}
```

<event> contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization. [13.3.1. Basic Principles]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

  @where indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element
      Status Optional
      Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.eventLike

Contained by

namesdates: event listEvent org person personGrp place

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

header: biblFull

linking: ab link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: event

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<person>
 <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12">
  <label>matriculation</label>
 </event>
 <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23">
  <label>graduation</label>
 </event>
</person>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="event" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element event
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute where { text }?,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_model.labelLike+ ),
      ( tei_model.noteLike | tei_model.biblLike | tei_linkGrp | tei_link )*,
      tei_event*
   )
}
```

\<ex\> (editorial expansion) contains a sequence of letters added by an editor or transcriber when expanding an abbreviation. [11.3.1.2. Abbreviation and Expansion]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
 <expan>R<ex>oa</ex>d</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Schematron \<sch:rule context="tei:ex"\> \<sch:report test="not(ancestor::tei:expan)"\>ex should only appear inside expan\</sch:report\> \<sch:report test="parent::tei:abbr"\>ex should not be a child of   abbr\</sch:report\> \</sch:rule\>

Schematron \<sch:rule context="tei:ex"\> \<sch:report test="not(ancestor::tei:expan)"\>ex should only appear inside expan\</sch:report\> \<sch:report test="parent::tei:abbr"\>ex should not be a child of abbr\</sch:report\> \</sch:rule\>

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element ex
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
        tei_att.editLike.attributes,
        tei_macro.xtext}
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5. Abbreviations and Their Expansions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The content of this element should be the expanded abbreviation, usually (but not always) a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the transcr module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

Example

```
The address is Southmoor
<choice>
 <expan>Road</expan>
 <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice xml:lang="la">
 <abbr>Imp</abbr>
 <expan>Imp<ex>erator</ex></expan>
</choice>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:expan"> <sch:report test="not(descendant::tei:ex)">expan should contain   ex</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:expan"> <sch:report test="not(descendant::tei:ex)">expan should contain ex</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element expan
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<explicit> contains the *explicit* of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.msExcerpt (*@defective*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit>
<rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric>
<explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi
   proporti<gap/></explicit>
<explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at
 </explicit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element explicit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other
object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. Type and Extent of
File 2.2. The File Description 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint
Information 10.7.1. Object Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: biblFull fileDesc

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

Example The <measure> element may be used to supply normalised or machine tractable versions
of the size or sizes concerned.

```
<extent>
 <measure unit="MiB" quantity="4.2">About four megabytes</measure>
 <measure unit="pages" quantity="245">245 pages of source
     material</measure>
</extent>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element extent { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

\<facsimile\> contains a representation of some written source in the form of a set of images rather
than as transcribed or encoded text. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declaring
(@*decls*)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

core: binaryObject graphic media

textstructure: back front

transcr: surface surfaceGrp

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <graphic url="page1.png"/>
 <surface>
  <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
  <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
 </surface>
 <graphic url="page3.png"/>
 <graphic url="page4.png"/>
</facsimile>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="front" minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
   <elementRef key="surface"/>
   <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="back" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element facsimile
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      tei_front?,
      ( tei_model.graphicLike | tei_surface | tei_surfaceGrp )+,
```

```
        tei_back?
    )
}
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [«#FTGRA»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

figures: figure

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent <figure> element ; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
 <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
 <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
     flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.limitedContent }
```

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [«#FTGRA»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.placement (@*place*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb cit desc gap gb graphic head index l label lb lg list listBibl media meeting milestone note p pb q quote said sp stage

figures: figDesc figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<figure>
 <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
      series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
 <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png"
   scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.common"/>
  <elementRef key="figDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element figure
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike    | tei_model.common    | tei_figDesc    | tei_model.graphicLik
}
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2.
The File Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain

header: editionStmt extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Note   The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or
bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of
responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to
which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the
header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which
the electronic text was derived.

Example

```
<fileDesc>
 <titleStmt>
  <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
 </titleStmt>
 <publicationStmt>
  <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
 </publicationStmt>
 <sourceDesc>
  <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
 </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="titleStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="editionStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="publicationStmt"/>
   <elementRef key="seriesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="notesStmt"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="sourceDesc"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         tei_titleStmt,
         tei_editionStmt?,
         tei_extent?,
         tei_publicationStmt,
         tei_seriesStmt?,
         tei_notesStmt?
      ),
      tei_sourceDesc+
   )
}
```

\<filiation\> contains information concerning the manuscript's *filiation*, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its *protographs*, *antigraphs* and *apographs*. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,

217

@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```xml
<msContents>
 <msItem>
  <title>Beljakovski sbornik</title>
  <filiation type="protograph">Bulgarian</filiation>
  <filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation>
  <filiation type="apograph">
   <ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref>
  </filiation>
 </msItem>
</msContents>
<!-- ... -->
<msDesc xml:id="DN17">
 <msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Faraway</settlement>
 </msIdentifier>
<!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
```

In this example, the reference to 'Dujchev N17' includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier DN17.

Example

```
    <msItem>
     <title>Guan-ben</title>
     <filiation>
      <p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the
            Qing dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is
            therefore difficult to know the correct filiation path to follow.
            The study of this era is much indebted to Li Di. We explain the
            outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen
            (1752-1786)(17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained
            "Guan-ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811)
            (19) took part in editing Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had
            "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-1834) obtained this version,
            and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General Dayan
            Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics
            Searching for One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu
            Zhang (20).</p>
      <p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge
            concerning the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21)
            -1817)(see his biography). ... only two volumes remain of this
            manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part 2) p.13, that is,
            question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops),
            which later has been lost.</p>
     </filiation>
    </msItem>
    <!--http://www2.nkfust.edu.tw/~jochi/ed1.htm-->
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element filiation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<finalRubric> contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art
   d'amours est toute enclose.</finalRubric>
<finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Nials savgv</finalRubric>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element finalRubric
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<floatingText\> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, which
interrupts the text containing it at any point and after which the surrounding text resumes.
[4.3.2. Floating Texts]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declaring
(@*decls*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage
title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note A floating text has the same content as any other <text> and may thus be interrupted by another floating text, or contain a <group> of tesselated texts.

Example

```
<body>
 <div type="scene">
  <sp>
   <p>Hush, the players begin...</p>
  </sp>
  <floatingText type="pwp">
   <body>
    <div type="act">
     <sp>
      <l>In Athens our tale takes place [...]</l>
     </sp>
<!-- ... rest of nested act here -->
    </div>
   </body>
  </floatingText>
  <sp>
   <p>Now that the play is finished ...</p>
  </sp>
 </div>
</body>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
```

```
    </alternate>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
     <elementRef key="back"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element floatingText
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_front, tei_model.global* )?,
      ( tei_body | tei_group ),
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_back, tei_model.global* )?
   )
}
```

\<floruit\> contains information about a person's period of activity. [13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<floruit notBefore="1066" notAfter="1100"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element floruit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<foliation\> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex. [10.7.1.4. Foliation]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent
listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region
roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<foliation>Contemporary foliation in red
   roman numerals in the centre
   of the outer margin.</foliation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foliation { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

\<foreign\> identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the
surrounding text. [3.3.2.1. Foreign Words or Expressions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled
speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl
handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The global *xml:lang* attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1. Language Identification.

This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global *xml:lang* attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element.

The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

Example

```
This is
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis
    philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element foreign { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<forename> contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module   namesdates

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.personal
(@*full*, @*sort*) (att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))) att.typed (@*type*,
@*subtype*)

Member of   model.persNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
<persName>
 <roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
 <forename>George</forename>
 <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element forename
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<front\> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, abstracts, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. Title Pages 4. Default Text Structure]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText text

transcr: facsimile

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb divGen gap gb head index lb listBibl meeting milestone note p pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note Because cultural conventions differ as to which elements are grouped as front matter and which as back matter, the content models for the \<front\> and \<back\> elements are identical.

Example

```
<front>
 <epigraph>
  <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis vidi in ampulla
```

```
              pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent: <q xml:lang="gr">Σίβυλλα τί
              θέλεις</q>; respondebat illa: <q xml:lang="gr">ἀποθανεῖν
θέλω.</q></quote>
 </epigraph>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q></p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
  <front>
 <div type="dedication">
  <p>To our three selves</p>
 </div>
 <div type="preface">
  <head>Author's Note</head>
  <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
        author has used names that may suggest a reference to living
persons
        she has done so inadvertently. ...</p>
 </div>
</front>
```

Example

```
  <front>
 <div type="abstract">
  <div>
   <head> BACKGROUND:</head>
   <p>Food insecurity can put children at greater risk of obesity because
        of altered food choices and nonuniform consumption patterns.</p>
  </div>
  <div>
   <head> OBJECTIVE:</head>
   <p>We examined the association between obesity and both child-level
        food insecurity and personal food insecurity in US children.</p>
  </div>
  <div>
   <head> DESIGN:</head>
   <p>Data from 9,701 participants in the National Health and Nutrition
        Examination Survey, 2001-2010, aged 2 to 11 years were analyzed.
        Child-level food insecurity was assessed with the US Department
of
        Agriculture's Food Security Survey Module based on eight
        child-specific questions. Personal food insecurity was assessed
with
        five additional questions. Obesity was defined, using physical
        measurements, as body mass index (calculated as kg/m2) greater
than
        or equal to the age- and sex-specific 95th percentile of the
Centers
        for Disease Control and Prevention growth charts. Logistic
        regressions adjusted for sex, race/ethnic group, poverty level,
and
        survey year were conducted to describe associations between
obesity
        and food insecurity.</p>
  </div>
  <div>
    <head> RESULTS:</head>
    <p>Obesity was significantly associated with personal food insecurity
```

```
            for children aged 6 to 11 years (odds ratio=1.81; 95% CI 1.33 to
            2.48), but not in children aged 2 to 5 years (odds ratio=0.88;
95%
            CI 0.51 to 1.51). Child-level food insecurity was not associated
            with obesity among 2- to 5-year-olds or 6- to 11-year-olds.</p>
   </div>
   <div>
    <head> CONCLUSIONS:</head>
    <p>Personal food insecurity is associated with an increased risk of
            obesity only in children aged 6 to 11 years. Personal
            food-insecurity measures may give different results than
aggregate
            food-insecurity measures in children.</p>
   </div>
  </div>
 </front>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.pLike.front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.div1Like"/>
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
    <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
      <classRef key="model.frontPart"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"/>
     </alternate>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element front
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      (
         tei_model.frontPart       | tei_model.pLike       | tei_model.pLike.front
      (
         (
            (
               tei_model.div1Like,
               ( tei_model.div1Like | tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.global )*
            )
          | (
               tei_model.divLike,
               ( tei_model.divLike | tei_model.frontPart | tei_model.global )*
            )
         ),
         ( tei_model.divBottom, ( tei_model.divBottom | tei_model.global )* )?
      )?
   )
}
```

\<funder\> (funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

character data

Note Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from *sponsors* (see element <sponsor>), who provide intellectual support and authority.

Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal
agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the European
Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of
Canada</funder>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element funder
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<fw> (forme work) contains a running head (e.g. a header, footer), catchword, or similar material appearing on the current page. [11.6. Headers, Footers, and Similar Matter]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.placement (@*place*) att.written (@*hand*)

@type classifies the material encoded according to some useful typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **header** a running title at the top of the page

footer a running title at the bottom of the page

pageNum (page number) a page number or foliation symbol

lineNum (line number) a line number, either of prose or poetry

sig (signature) a signature or gathering symbol

catch (catchword) a catch-word

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Where running heads are consistent throughout a chapter or section, it is usually more convenient to relate them to the chapter or section, e.g. by use of the *rend* attribute. The <fw> element is intended for cases where the running head changes from page to page, or where details of page layout and the internal structure of the running heads are of paramount importance.

Example

```
<fw type="sig" place="bottom">C3</fw>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element fw
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5. Characters, Glyphs, and Writing Modes]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

   @ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c interp m pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title unclear

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping value

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote idno licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation collection colophon condition custEvent decoNote depth dim explicit filiation finalRubric foliation height heraldry incipit institution layout locus material msName musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance repository rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark width

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage ex fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain Character data only

Note   The name g is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier ctlig like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraph per could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier per like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
```

Content model   <content> <textNode/></content>

Schema Declaration

```
element g
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute ref { text }?,
   text
}
```

<gap>   indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.timed (@*start*, @*end*) att.duration.iso (@*dur-iso*)

@reason *Status* Required

Legal values are: **lost** Text completely lost from the surface and unrecoverable

illegible Traces of text remain on the surface but cannot be interpreted

omitted Text erroneously omitted from the surface by the scribe/cutter

ellipsis Text omitted from the edition by the editor, for whatever reason (brevity, context, language, etc.)

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, indicates the hand which made the deletion.

Deprecated will be removed on 2017-08-01

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@agent in the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

    mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

    smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as <del> in the case of deliberate deletion.

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars"
 reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay"
 reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
 <gap atLeast="4" atMost="8" unit="chars"
  reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="several lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:gap"> <sch:report test="@quantity and @extent">gap may
    have @quantity   (a figure) or @extent (a descriptive text value) but not   both</sch:report>
    <sch:report test="@quantity and not(@unit)">If gap has @quantity   then @unit is
    required</sch:report> <sch:report test="not(@reason='ellipsis') and
    ancestor::tei:supplied[not(@reason='undefined')]">gap may not appear within supplied
    text</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:gap"> <sch:report test="@quantity and @extent">gap   may
    have @quantity (a figure) or @extent (a descriptive text value) but not both</sch:report>
    <sch:report test="@quantity and not(@unit)">If gap has @quantity then   @unit is
    required</sch:report> <sch:report test="not(@reason='ellipsis') and
    ancestor::tei:supplied[not(@reason='undefined')]">gap   may not appear within supplied
    text</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gap
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.timed.attribute.start,
   tei_att.timed.attribute.end,
   tei_att.duration.iso.attribute.dur-iso,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { "lost" | "illegible" | "omitted" | "ellipsis" },
   attribute hand { text }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

\<gb\> (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.spanning (@*spanTo*) att.breaking (@*break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <gb> elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation.

The *type* attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

Example

```
<gb n="iii"/>
<pb n="2r"/>
<!-- material from page 2 recto of gathering iii here -->
<pb n="2v"/>
<!-- material from page 2 verso of gathering iii here -->
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element gb
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<genName> (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.personal (@*full*, @*sort*) (att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<persName>
 <forename>Charles</forename>
 <genName>II</genName>
</persName>
```

Example

```
<persName>
 <surname>Pitt</surname>
 <genName>the Younger</genName>
</persName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element genName
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<geo> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1. Varieties of Location]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain Character data only

Note   Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI header, using the *decls* attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.

Example

```
<geoDecl xml:id="WGS" datum="WGS84">World Geodetic System</geoDecl>
<geoDecl xml:id="OS" datum="OSGB36">Ordnance Survey</geoDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<location>
 <desc>A tombstone plus six lines of
    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side
    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the
    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln.</desc>
 <geo decls="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</geo>
 <geo decls="#OS">SK 97481 70947</geo>
</location>
```

Example

```
<geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo>
```

Content model   `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element geo { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.declaring.attributes, text }
```

<geoDecl> (geographic coordinates declaration) documents the notation and the datum used for geographic coordinates expressed as content of the <geo> element elsewhere within the document. [2.3.8. The Geographic Coordinates Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

@datum supplies a commonly used code name for the datum employed.
    Status Optional
    Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **WGS84** (World Geodetic System) a pair of numbers to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.[Default]

  MGRS (Military Grid Reference System) the values supplied are geospatial entity object codes, based on

  OSGB36 (ordnance survey great britain) the value supplied is to be interpreted as a British National Grid Reference.

  ED50 (European Datum coordinate system) the value supplied is to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the European Datum coordinate system.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

  character data

Example

```
<geoDecl datum="OSGB36"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element geoDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute datum { "WGS84" | "MGRS" | "OSGB36" | "ED50" }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<geogFeat\> (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.offsetLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element geogFeat
{
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<geogName> (geographical name) identifies a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<geogName>
 <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>
 <name>Sinai</name>
</geogName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element geogName
{
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<gloss\> identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions 22.4.1. Description of Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.translatable (*@versionDate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.cReferencing (*@cRef*)

Member of model.emphLike model.glossLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc category change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
We may define <term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss target="#tdpv">the relationship, expressed
    through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
    fiction.</gloss>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element gloss
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.translatable.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<glyph\> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

gaiji: charDecl

May contain

core: binaryObject desc graphic media note

figures: figure

gaiji: charProp glyphName mapping

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
 <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName>
 <charProp>
  <localName>entity</localName>
  <value>rstroke</value>
```

```
  </charProp>
 <figure>
  <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
 </figure>
</glyph>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="glyphName" minOccurs="0"/>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="charProp" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="mapping" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="figure" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element glyph
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_glyphName?,
      tei_model.descLike*,
      tei_charProp*,
      tei_mapping*,
      tei_figure*,
      tei_model.graphicLike*,
      tei_model.noteLike*
   )
}
```

<glyphName> (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

gaiji: glyph

May contain Character data only

Note   For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an *Ideographic Description Sequence* (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange.

Example

```
<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>
```

Content model   `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration   `element glyphName { tei_att.global.attributes, text }`

<graphic>

indicates the location of a graphic or illustration, either forming part of a text, or providing an image of it. [3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components 11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.media (@*width*, @*height*, @*scale*) (att.internetMedia (@*mimeType*)) att.resourced (@*url*) att.declaring (@*decls*)

Member of   model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Note   The *mimeType* attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the *url* attribute.

Within the body of a text, a <graphic> element indicates the presence of a graphic

component in the source itself. Within the context of a <facsimile> or <sourceDoc> element, however, a <graphic> element provides an additional digital representation of some part of the source being encoded.

Example

```
<figure>
 <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
 <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
      series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page1.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
   <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element graphic
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.media.attributes,
   tei_att.resourced.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_model.descLike*
}
```

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. Default Text Structure 4.3.1. Grouped Texts 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Contained by

textstructure: floatingText group text
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
certainty: certainty precision
core: cb gap gb head index lb meeting milestone note pb
figures: figure notatedMusic
linking: anchor join link linkGrp
textcrit: app witDetail
textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group text
transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin
Example

```
<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
 <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first poem -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second poem -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
   </alternate>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="text"/>
    <elementRef key="group"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.divBottom"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element group
{
```

```
        tei_att.global.attributes,
        tei_att.declaring.attributes,
        tei_att.typed.attributes,
        (
           ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global )*,
           (
              ( tei_text | tei_group ),
              ( tei_text | tei_group | tei_model.global )*
           ),
           tei_model.divBottom*
        )
}
```

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@hands specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript

  Status Optional

  Datatype teidata.count

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: handNote

linking: ab

msdescription: summary

Example

```
<handDesc>
 <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana
formata</term>.</handNote>
</handDesc>
```

Example

```
<handDesc hands="2">
 <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
    unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
    ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably
    Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand
    on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p>
</handDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element handDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute hands { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_summary?, tei_handNote+ ) )
}
```

\<handNote\> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) (att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition)) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) (att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) (att.global.source (@source)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Contained by

msdescription: handDesc

transcr: handNotes

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<handNote scope="sole">
 <p>Written in insular
     phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English gloss in an
Anglo-Saxon pointed
     minuscule.</p>
</handNote>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element handNote
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.handFeatures.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<handNotes> contains one or more <handNote> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: handNote

Example

```
<handNotes>
 <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate"
  medium="brown-ink">Carefully written with regular descenders</handNote>
 <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print"
  medium="pencil">Unschooled scrawl</handNote>
</handNotes>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="handNote" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element handNotes { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_handNote+ }
```

\<handShift\> marks the beginning of a sequence of text written in a new hand, or the beginning of a scribal stint. [11.3.2.1. Document Hands]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.handFeatures (@*scribe*, @*scribeRef*, @*script*, @*scriptRef*, @*medium*, @*scope*)

@new indicates a \<handNote\> element describing the hand concerned.

    Status Recommended

    Datatype teidata.pointer

    Note This attribute serves the same function as the *hand* attribute provided for those elements which are members of the **att.transcriptional** class. It may be renamed at a subsequent major release.

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note The \<handShift\> element may be used either to denote a shift in the document hand (as from one scribe to another, on one writing style to another). Or, it may indicate a shift within a document hand, as a change of writing style, character or ink. Like other milestone elements, it should appear at the point of transition from some other state to the state which it describes.

Example

```
<l>When wolde the cat dwelle in his ynne</l>
<handShift medium="greenish-ink"/>
```

```
<l>And if the cattes skynne be slyk <handShift medium="black-ink"/> and
gaye</l>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element handShift
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.handFeatures.attributes,
   attribute new { text }?,
   empty
}
```

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1. Headings and Trailers]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: divGen lg list listBibl

figures: figure table

msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart

namesdates: event listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation org place state

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: back body div front group

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter
headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of
a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element
of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of
that chapter or section.

Example   The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In
older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a
section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as
in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
 <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
     Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
 <div2 type="section">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
  <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
  <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
       years passed.</p>
  <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
       years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
 </div2>
</div1>
```

Example   The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,
argument. <list rend="bulleted">
 <head>Connectives</head>
 <item>above</item>
 <item>accordingly</item>
 <item>across from</item>
 <item>adjacent to</item>
 <item>again</item>
 <item>
<!-- ... -->
 </item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
 <textNode/>
 <elementRef key="lg"/>
 <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
 <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
 <classRef key="model.inter"/>
 <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
 <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element head
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_lg    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.phrase    | tei_model.inter    | tei_mod
}
```

\<headItem\> (heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The \<headItem\> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a \<label\>.

Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">
 <headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>
 <headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
```

```
      <label>bury the hatchet</label>
      <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
      <label>at loose ends</label>
      <item>disorganized</item>
      <label>on speaking terms</label>
      <item>friendly</item>
      <label>fair and square</label>
      <item>completely honest</item>
      <label>at death's door</label>
      <item>near death</item>
   </list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element headItem { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<headLabel> (heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The <headLabel> element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a <label>.

Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an
idea is preferable to the use of a worn-out expression. <list type="gloss">
 <headLabel rend="smallcaps">TRITE</headLabel>
 <headItem rend="smallcaps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
 <label>bury the hatchet</label>
 <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
 <label>at loose ends</label>
 <item>disorganized</item>
 <label>on speaking terms</label>
 <item>friendly</item>
 <label>fair and square</label>
 <item>completely honest</item>
 <label>at death's door</label>
 <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element headLabel { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<height> contains a measurement measured along the axis at right angles to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. parallel to the spine for a codex or book. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material

     musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

     character data

Note   If used to specify the height of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis perpendicular to the surface of the earth.

Example

```
<height unit="in" quantity="7"/>
```

Content model   `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element height
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

\<heraldry\> contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [10.3.8. Heraldry]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material

musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms
 <heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty,
     in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole],
   crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element heraldry { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. Emphatic Words and Phrases 3.3.2. Emphasis, Foreign Words, and Unusual Language]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.written (@*hand*) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (~~rend~~, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp,

@synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@rend   *Status* Required

> *Datatype* 1–5 occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
>
> *Suggested values include:* **acute** ancient acute (oxia, tonos) diacritic
>
> > **apex** ancient apex (identical in appearance to acute), marking a long vowel
> >
> > **asper** ancient asper (rough breathing) diacritic
> >
> > **circumflex** ancient circumflex (perispomeni) diacritic
> >
> > **diaeresis** ancient diaeresis
> >
> > **grave** ancient grave (varia) diacritic
> >
> > **intraline** characters scored or struck through at the mid-line level
> >
> > **inverted** character(s) inverted or rotated with respect to the rest of the text
> >
> > **italic** italicized character(s)
> >
> > **lenis** ancient lenis (smooth breathing) diacritic
> >
> > **ligature** two (or more) letters ligatured, monogrammed, or therwise joined
> >
> > **normal** unmarked character(s)
> >
> > **reversed** characters reversed (backward-facing) with respect to the rest of the line of text
> >
> > **small** Letter(s) smaller than those around them
> >
> > **subscript** characters written lower than the surrounding text
> >
> > **superscript** characters written higher than the surrounding text
> >
> > **supraline** characters written with a supralinear line above (e.g. for abbreviation or numerals)
> >
> > **tall** Letter(s) taller than those around it, e.g. I-longa
> >
> > **underline** text written with solid line beneath
> >
> > **stacked** a character written directly above another character (as opposed to superscript)

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

 character data

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hi
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
```

```
tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
tei_att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
tei_att.written.attributes,
attribute rend
{
    list
    {
        (
            "acute"
          | "apex"
          | "asper"
          | "circumflex"
          | "diaeresis"
          | "grave"
          | "intraline"
          | "inverted"
          | "italic"
          | "lenis"
          | "ligature"
          | "normal"
          | "reversed"
          | "small"
          | "subscript"
          | "superscript"
          | "supraline"
          | "tall"
          | "underline"
          | "stacked"
        ),
        (
            "acute"
          | "apex"
          | "asper"
          | "circumflex"
          | "diaeresis"
          | "grave"
          | "intraline"
          | "inverted"
          | "italic"
          | "lenis"
          | "ligature"
          | "normal"
          | "reversed"
          | "small"
          | "subscript"
          | "superscript"
          | "supraline"
          | "tall"
          | "underline"
          | "stacked"
        )?,
        (
            "acute"
          | "apex"
          | "asper"
```

```
                | "circumflex"
                | "diaeresis"
                | "grave"
                | "intraline"
                | "inverted"
                | "italic"
                | "lenis"
                | "ligature"
                | "normal"
                | "reversed"
                | "small"
                | "subscript"
                | "superscript"
                | "supraline"
                | "tall"
                | "underline"
                | "stacked"
            )?,
            (
                "acute"
                | "apex"
                | "asper"
                | "circumflex"
                | "diaeresis"
                | "grave"
                | "intraline"
                | "inverted"
                | "italic"
                | "lenis"
                | "ligature"
                | "normal"
                | "reversed"
                | "small"
                | "subscript"
                | "superscript"
                | "supraline"
                | "tall"
                | "underline"
                | "stacked"
            )?,
            (
                "acute"
                | "apex"
                | "asper"
                | "circumflex"
                | "diaeresis"
                | "grave"
                | "intraline"
                | "inverted"
                | "italic"
                | "lenis"
                | "ligature"
                | "normal"
                | "reversed"
                | "small"
                | "subscript"
                | "superscript"
                | "supraline"
                | "tall"
                | "underline"
                | "stacked"
            )?
        }
```

265

```
    },
    tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.8. History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: acquisition origin provenance summary

Example

```
<history>
 <origin>
  <p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth
     century.</p>
 </origin>
 <provenance>
  <p>Recorded in two medieval
     catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391
and
     1405.</p>
 </provenance>
 <provenance>
  <p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)
     and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island
(Lindisfarne)
     according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p>
 </provenance>
 <acquisition>
  <p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by
     Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</p>
 </acquisition>
</history>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="origin" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="provenance"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="acquisition"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
```

```
    </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element history
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_summary?, tei_origin?, tei_provenance*, tei_acquisition? )
   )
}
```

\<hyphenation\> summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

@eol (end-of-line) indicates whether or not end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in a text.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Legal values are: **all** all end-of-line hyphenation has been retained, even though the lineation of the original may not have been.

        some end-of-line hyphenation has been retained in some cases.[Default]

        hard all soft end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining end-of-line hyphenation should be retained.

        none all end-of-line hyphenation has been removed: any remaining hyphenation occurred within the line.

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<hyphenation eol="some">
 <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element hyphenation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2.5. The Series Statement 3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.typed (~~type~~, @*subtype*)

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number, etc.

   Derived from att.typed

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Suggested values include: **ISBN** International Standard Book Number: a 13- or (if assigned prior to 2007) 10-digit identifying number assigned by the publishing industry to a published book or similar item, registered with the International ISBN Agency.

   ISSN International Standard Serial Number: an eight-digit number to uniquely identify a serial publication.

   DOI Digital Object Identifier: a unique string of letters and numbers assigned to an electronic document.

   URI Uniform Resource Identifier: a string of characters to uniquely identify a resource which usually contains indication of the means of accessing that resource, the name of its host, and its filepath.

   VIAF A data number in the Virtual Internet Authority File assigned to link different names in catalogs around the world for the same entity.

   ESTC English Short-Title Catalogue number: an identifying number assigned to a document in English printed in the British Isles or North America before 1801.

   OCLC union catalog number in WorldCat representing a resource held by one or more of the member libraries in the global cooperative Online Computer Library Center.

Member of model.msItemPart model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote idno language licence principal publicationStmt rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msIdentifier msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

header: idno

character data

Note <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web. Some suggested values for *type* on <idno> are ISBN, ISSN, DOI, and URI.

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/185922478</idno>
<idno type="URI">http://authority.nzetc.org/463/</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
 <g ref="#sym"/>345</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as #sym.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="idno"/>
 </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element idno
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "ISBN" | "ISSN" | "DOI" | "URI" | "VIAF" | "ESTC" | "OCLC"
   }?,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_idno )*
}
```

<imprint> groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: monogr

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: biblScope cb date gap gb index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher respStmt time

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: catRef classCode distributor

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<imprint>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
 <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="classCode"/>
   <elementRef key="catRef"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <classRef key="model.imprintPart"/>
     <classRef key="model.dateLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="respStmt" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element imprint
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_classCode | tei_catRef )*,
      (
         ( tei_model.imprintPart | tei_model.dateLike ),
         tei_respStmt*,
         tei_model.global*
      )+
   )
}
```

<incipit> contains the *incipit* of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.msExcerpt (@*defective*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit>
<incipit defective="true">tatem dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit>
<incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet</incipit>
<incipit>O ongehoerde gewerdighe christi</incipit>
<incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit>
<incipit>Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non
potest</incipit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element incipit
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2. Index Entries]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.spanning (@*spanTo*)

@indexName a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name), supplying a name to specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.name

Note   This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a text.

Member of   model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint index item l label lg list

272

measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: index term

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
 <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
 <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="term"/>
  <elementRef key="index" minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element index
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   attribute indexName { text }?,
   ( tei_term, tei_index? )*
}
```

\<institution\> contains the name of an organization such as a university or library, with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming
(*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
 <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
 <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
 <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
 <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element institution
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.naming.attributes,
    tei_macro.xtext}
```

<interp> (interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.interpLike
(*@type*, *@inst*)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: interpGrp m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list
measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said
series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language
licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem

musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

gaiji: g

character data

Note Generally, each <interp> element carries an *xml:id* attribute. This permits the encoder to explicitly associate the interpretation represented by the content of an <interp> with any textual element through its *ana* attribute.

Alternatively (or, in addition) an <interp> may carry an *inst* attribute which points to one or more textual elements to which the analysis represented by the content of the <interp> applies.

Example

```
<interp type="structuralunit"
 xml:id="ana_am">aftermath</interp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.interpLike.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

<interpGrp> (interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type. [17.3. Spans and Interpretations]

Module analysis

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.interpLike (@*type*, @*inst*)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: interp

core: desc

Note Any number of <interp> elements.

Example

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA"
 type="structuralunit">
 <desc>basic structural organization</desc>
 <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
 <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
 <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
 <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
 <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
 <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
<bibl xml:id="TMA">
<!-- bibliographic citation for source of this
interpretive framework -->
</bibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
  <classRef key="model.descLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="interp" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interpGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.interpLike.attributes,
   ( tei_model.descLike*, tei_interp+ )
}
```

\<interpretation\> describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<interpretation>
 <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was added by
hand and has not
    been checked</p>
</interpretation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element interpretation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

\<item\> contains one component of a list. [3.7. Lists 2.6. The Revision Description]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks.

Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the \<item\> element is by definition synonymous with the use of the \<label\> element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the \<label\> element, not *n*.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
 <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
 <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
 <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
 <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
 <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
 <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
```

```
   <item> ...</item>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element item
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<join\> identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontiguous elements which compose it. [16.7. Aggregation]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

    @result specifies the name of an element which this aggregation may be understood to represent.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.name

    @scope indicates whether the targets to be joined include the entire element indicated (the entire subtree including its root), or just the children of the target (the branches of the subtree).

        Status Recommended

        Datatype teidata.enumerated

        Legal values are: **root** the rooted subtrees indicated by the *target* attribute are joined, each subtree become a child of the virtual element created by the join[Default]

            branches the children of the subtrees indicated by the *target* attribute become the children of the virtual element (i.e. the roots of the subtrees are discarded)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Example The following example is discussed in section SAAG:

```
<sp>
 <speaker>Hughie</speaker>
 <p>How does it go? <q>
   <l xml:id="frog_x1">da-da-da</l>
   <l xml:id="frog_l2">gets a new frog</l>
   <l>...</l>
   </q></p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Louie</speaker>
 <p>
  <q>
   <l xml:id="frog_l1">When the old pond</l>
   <l>...</l>
  </q>
 </p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Dewey</speaker>
 <p>
  <q>... <l xml:id="frog_l3">It's a new pond.</l></q>
 </p>
 <join target="#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3"
  result="lg" scope="root"/>
</sp>
```

The <join> element here identifies a linegroup (<lg>) comprising the three lines indicated by the *target* attribute. The value `root` for the *scope* attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three <l> elements linked to at #frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3, rather than their character data content.

Example In this example, the attribute *scope* is specified with the value of `branches` to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the *target* attribute of the <join> element, discarding the <list> tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```
<p>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only <list xml:id="LP1">
  <item>
   <s>I done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
   <s>I done went</s>
  </item>
 </list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and
<list xml:id="LP2">
  <item>
   <s>I done go</s>
  </item>
 </list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has <list xml:id="LP3">
  <item>
   <s>I've done gone</s>
  </item>
  <item>
   <s>I've done went</s>
  </item>
 </list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably be
considered as borrowings from other varieties of English.</p>
<join result="list" xml:id="LST1"
 target="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3" scope="branches">
 <desc>Sample sentences in Southern speech</desc>
</join>
```

Schematron <s:assert test="contains(@target,' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target on <s:name/> </s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element join
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute result { text }?,
   attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,
   ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

<keywords> contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.
[2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@scheme identifies the controlled vocabulary within which the set of keywords
concerned is defined, for example by a <taxonomy> element, or by some other
resource.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Contained by: textClass

May contain

core: list term

Note Each individual keyword (including compound subject headings) should be supplied as a
<term> element directly within the <keywords> element. An alternative usage, in which
each <term> appears within a <item> inside a <list> is permitted for backwards
compatibility, but is deprecated.

If no control list exists for the keywords used, then no value should be supplied for the *scheme*
attribute.

Example

```
<keywords scheme="http://classificationweb.net">
 <term>Babbage, Charles</term>
 <term>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</term>
</keywords>
```

Example

```
<keywords>
 <term>Fermented beverages</term>
 <term>Central Andes</term>
 <term>Schinus molle</term>
 <term>Molle beer</term>
 <term>Indigenous peoples</term>
 <term>Ethnography</term>
 <term>Archaeology</term>
</keywords>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="term" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="list"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element keywords
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   ( tei_term+ | tei_list )
}
```

<1>

<l> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.metrical (@*met*, @*real*, @*rhyme*) att.enjamb (@*enjamb*) att.fragmentable (@*part*)

Member of model.lLike

Contained by

core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index label lb list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<l met="x/x/x/x/x/" real="/xx/x/x/x/">Shall I compare thee to a summer's
day?</l>
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:l[tei:app]"> <sch:report test="tei:app and count(*) = 1 and normalize-space(string-join(text(),"")) = """ role="warn">Consider whether the line should be inside the   app.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:l[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain lines or lg elements. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element l
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.metrical.attributes,
   tei_att.enjamb.attributes,
   tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
   (
      text
   | tei_model.gLike   | tei_model.phrase   | tei_model.inter   | tei_model.global
}
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.placement (@*place*) att.written (@*hand*)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg list meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

header: application change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org place state

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surface surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example   Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global *xml:lang* attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
 <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
 <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
 <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
 <label>nu</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
 <label>lhude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
 <label>bloweth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
 <label>med</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
 <label>wude</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
 <label>awe</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
 <label>lhouth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
 <label>sterteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
   <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
   <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
  </cit></item>
 <label>verteth</label>
 <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
 <label>murie</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
 <label>swik</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
 <label>naver</label>
 <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

Example   Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the *n* attribute on the <item> element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
 <label>(1)</label>
 <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
 <label>(2) </label>
 <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
     printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of
     Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
 <label>March 1757.</label>
 <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
 <label>March 8th.</label>
 <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
 <label>June.</label>
 <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod — <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor,
et nos cedamus
       amori.</quote></item>
 <label>August.</label>
 <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>
```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling.
Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or
     sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note
     that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as
     a preceding sibling of it.

```
<p>[...]
 <lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
 <lb/>ré meſnage. Or des que le conſente-
 <lb/>ment des parties y eſt le mariage eſt
 <lb/> arreſté, quoy que de faict il ne ſoit
 <label place="margin">Puiſſance maritale
     entre les Romains.</label>
 <lb/> conſommé. Depuis la conſomma-
 <lb/>tion du mariage la femme eſt ſoubs
 <lb/> la puiſſance du mary, s'il n'eſt eſcla-
 <lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce
 <lb/> cas, la femme, qui a eſpouſé vn en-
 <lb/>fant de famille, eſt ſous la puiſſance
     [...]</p>
```

In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand margin of the original source,
next to the paragraph it describes, but approximately in the middle of it. If so desired the *type*
attribute may be used to distinguish different categories of label.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element label
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<lacunaEnd> indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.rdgPart (*@wit*)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<rdg wit="#X">
 <lacunaEnd/>auctorite</rdg>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element lacunaEnd
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.rdgPart.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<lacunaStart> indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete textual witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.rdgPart (*@wit*)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
 <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
  <lacunaStart/></rdg>
</app>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element lacunaStart
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.rdgPart.attributes,
   empty
}
```

<langUsage> (language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects, etc. represented within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

header: language

linking: ab

Example

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québecois</language>
 <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
 <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="language" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element langUsage
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_language+ )
}
```

<language> characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text. [2.4.2. Language Usage]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

@ident (identifier) Supplies a language code constructed as defined in BCP 47 which is used to identify the language documented by this element, and which is referenced by the global *xml:lang* attribute.
Status Required
Datatype teidata.language

@usage specifies the approximate percentage (by volume) of the text which uses this language.
Status Optional
Datatype nonNegativeInteger

Contained by header: langUsage

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin character data

Note Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

Example

```
<langUsage>
 <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
 <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic
script</language>
 <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element language
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute ident { text },
   attribute usage { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

\<layout\> describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@columns specifies the number of columns per page
   Status Optional
   Datatype 1–2 occurrences of teidata.count separated by whitespace
   Note If a single number is given, all pages have this number of columns. If two numbers are given, the number of columns per page varies between the values supplied.

@ruledLines specifies the number of ruled lines per column
   Status Optional
   Datatype 1–2 occurrences of teidata.count separated by whitespace
   Note If a single number is given, all columns have this number of ruled lines. If two numbers are given, the number of ruled lines per column varies between the values supplied.

@writtenLines specifies the number of written lines per column
   Status Optional
   Datatype 1–2 occurrences of teidata.count separated by whitespace
   Note If a single number is given, all columns have this number of written lines. If two numbers are given, the number of written lines per column varies between the values supplied.

Contained by *description:*   layoutDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32
long lines ruled in lead.</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
 <p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule
     between the columns.</p>
</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50">
 <p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule
     between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of
writing.</p>
</layout>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element layout
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
attribute columns { list { ? } }?,
attribute ruledLines { list { ? } }?,
attribute writtenLines { list { ? } }?,
tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<layoutDesc> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: objectDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: layout summary

Example

```
<layoutDesc>
 <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p>
</layoutDesc>
```

Example

```
<layoutDesc>
 <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
  <p>
   <locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/>
       2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with
       central rule between the columns.</p>
 </layout>
 <layout columns="3">
  <p xml:lang="zh-TW">
   <locus from="f16"/>小孔的三欄可見.</p>
 </layout>
</layoutDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="layout" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element layoutDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_summary?, tei_layout+ ) )
}
```

<lb> (line-beginning) marks the start of each line of the transcribed text, including the first [3.10.3. Milestone Elements 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@coresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*)

@break *Status* Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **no** this line-beginning should not be taken as a word-break, i.e. word would be hyphenated in a printed text

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The *n* attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line

breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The *break* attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart>
 <lb/>With Additions, ne-<lb break="no"/>ver before Printed.</titlePart>
```

Content model `<content/>`

Schema Declaration

```
element lb
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.edition.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   attribute break { "no" }?,
   empty
}
```

<lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.textCritical (@*type*, @*cause*, @*varSeq*, @*require*) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.witnessed (@*wit*) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@ana *Status* Optional

   Datatype 1−∞ occurrences of teidata.fragId separated by whitespace

   Suggested values include: **#lexical**

   #syntactic

   #morphological

   #ordinal

   #orthographical

   #subtractive

   #additive

Contained by: app rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart

textstructure: div floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
 <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.rdgPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lem
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.textCritical.attributes,
   tei_att.witnessed.attributes,
   attribute ana
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "#lexical"
          | "#syntactic"
          | "#morphological"
          | "#ordinal"
          | "#orthographical"
          | "#subtractive"
          | "#additive"
         )+
      }
   }?,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.divLike    | tei_model.divPart    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.phrase
}
```

\<lg\> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. Core Tags for Verse 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.divLike (*@org*, *@sample*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declaring (*@decls*)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: add corr del emph head hi item lg note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb desc gap gb head index l label lb lg meeting milestone note pb stage

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

Example

```
<lg type="free">
 <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
 <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>is equivocal.</l>
 <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
 <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
 <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:lg[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain line groups. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <elementRef key="lg"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"/>
     <elementRef key="lg"/>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element lg
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.divLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global )*,
      ( tei_model.lLike | tei_model.stageLike | tei_model.labelLike | tei_lg ),
      (
        tei_model.lLike       | tei_model.stageLike      | tei_model.labelLike      |
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
```

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text.
[2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing
(*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*,
@notBefore, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*,
@from-iso, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*,
@from-custom, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by

header: availability

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email
emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure

measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The *target* attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The *when*, *notBefore*, *notAfter*, *from* or *to* attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

Example

```
<licence target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/tei-NZETC-
Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share Alike 3.0
New Zealand Licence
  </licence>
```

Example

```
<availability>
 <licence target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
  notBefore="2013-01-01">
  <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
      applies to this document.</p>
  <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
 </licence>
</availability>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element licence
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<line\> contains the transcription of a topographic line in the source document [11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.coordinated (*@start*, *@ulx*, *@uly*, *@lrx*, *@lry*, *@points*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.linePart

Contained by

transcr: line surface zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp pc w

certainty: certainty precision

core: add cb choice del gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan damage delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace space substJoin undo zone

character data

Note This element should be used only to mark up writing which is topographically organized as a series of lines, horizontal or vertical. It should not be used to mark lines of verse (for which use \<l\>) nor to mark linebreaks within text which has been encoded using structural elements such as \<p\> (for which use \<lb\>).

Example

```
<surface>
 <zone>
  <line>Poem</line>
  <line>As in Visions of — at</line>
  <line>night —</line>
  <line>All sorts of fancies running through</line>
  <line>the head</line>
 </zone>
</surface>
```

Example

```
<surface>
 <zone>
  <line>Hope you enjoyed</line>
  <line>Wales, as they
       said</line>
  <line>to Mrs FitzHerbert</line>
  <line>Mama</line>
 </zone>
 <zone>
  <line>Printed in England</line>
```

```
      </zone>
    </surface>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.linePart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element line
{
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.coordinated.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.global | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.linePart )*
}
```

\<link\> defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements. [16.1. Links]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab linkGrp seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district event floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note   This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements.

The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the *type* attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>.

Example

```
<s n="1">The state Supreme Court has refused to release <rs xml:id="R1">
  <rs xml:id="R2">Rahway State Prison</rs> inmate</rs>
 <rs xml:id="R3">James Scott</rs> on bail.</s>
<s n="2">
 <rs xml:id="R4">The fighter</rs> is serving 30-40 years
    for a 1975 armed robbery conviction in <rs xml:id="R5">the
penitentiary</rs>.</s>
<!-- ... -->
<linkGrp type="periphrasis">
 <link target="#R1 #R3 #R4"/>
 <link target="#R2 #R5"/>
</linkGrp>
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="contains(normalize-space(@target),' ')">You must supply at least two values for @target or on <sch:name/></sch:assert>

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element link
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    empty
}
```

<linkGrp> (link group) defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links. [16.1. Links]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.pointing.group (@*domains*, @*targFunc*) (att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*)) (att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district event floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: ptr

linking: link

Note May contain one or more <link> elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements.

A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the *type* attribute.

Example

```
<linkGrp type="translation">
 <link target="#CCS1 #SW1"/>
 <link target="#CCS2 #SW2"/>
 <link target="#CCS #SW"/>
</linkGrp>
<div type="volume" xml:id="CCS"
 xml:lang="fr">
 <p>
  <s xml:id="CCS1">Longtemps, je me suis couché de bonne heure.</s>
  <s xml:id="CCS2">Parfois, à peine ma bougie éteinte, mes yeux se
fermaient si vite que je n'avais pas le temps de me dire : "Je
m'endors."</s>
 </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
<div type="volume" xml:id="SW" xml:lang="en">
 <p>
  <s xml:id="SW1">For a long time I used to go to bed early.</s>
  <s xml:id="SW2">Sometimes, when I had put out my candle, my eyes would
close so quickly that I had not even time to say "I'm going to sleep."</s>
 </p>
<!-- ... -->
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="link"/>
  <elementRef key="ptr"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element linkGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.group.attributes,
   ( tei_link | tei_ptr )+
}
```

\<list\> contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7. Lists]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.typed (~~type~~, @subtype)

@type describes the nature of the items in the list.

> *Derived from* att.typed
>
> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Suggested values include:* **gloss** each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a \<label\> element preceding the list item.
>
>> **index** each list item is an entry in an index such as the alphabetical topical index at the back of a print volume.
>>
>> **instructions** each list item is a step in a sequence of instructions, as in a recipe.
>>
>> **litany** each list item is one of a sequence of petitions, supplications or invocations, typically in a religious ritual.
>>
>> **syllogism** each list item is part of an argument consisting of two or more propositions and a final conclusion derived from them.
>
> *Note* Previous versions of these Guidelines recommended the use of *type* on \<list\> to encode the rendering or appearance of a list (whether it was bulleted, numbered, etc.). The current recommendation is to use the *rend* or *style* attributes for these aspects of a list, while using *type* for the more appropriate task of characterizing the nature of the content of a list.
>
> *Note* The formal syntax of the element declarations allows \<label\> tags to be omitted from lists tagged \<list type="gloss"\>; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote keywords licence rendition revisionDesc scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb head headItem headLabel index item label lb meeting milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note   May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

Example

```
<list rend="numbered">
 <item>a butcher</item>
 <item>a baker</item>
 <item>a candlestick maker, with
  <list rend="bulleted">
   <item>rings on his fingers</item>
   <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list></item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="syllogism" rend="bulleted">
 <item>All Cretans are liars.</item>
 <item>Epimenides is a Cretan.</item>
 <item>ERGO Epimenides is a liar.</item>
</list>
```

Example

```
<list type="litany" rend="simple">
 <item>God save us from drought.</item>
 <item>God save us from pestilence.</item>
 <item>God save us from wickedness in high places.</item>
 <item>Praise be to God.</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
 <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
```

```
 <list rend="numbered">
  <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
is caught with
        the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
        eightpence.
   <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his
            wergild — and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account — or to
            clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
    <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
to escape, he is
            not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
    <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
            then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to
stand surety for him
            that he will desist for ever.</item>
    <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
            or to bring him back there.</item>
    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
with his wergild,
            whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
            supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
   </list></item>
  <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
        no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
        person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
   <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
that appointed day,
            he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters
him is to strike him
            down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
            or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
   </list></item>
  <item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the
value of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice.
   <list rend="numbered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
slave, and it becomes
            known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
            occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay
all that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
```

306

```
reeves, who has been
                an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable
to the same.</item>
    </list></item>
   <item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he
cannot deny it or is
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
 </list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
    confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy
Cross, and afterwards
    inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus
the sign of the Holy
    Cross.
 <list rend="simple">
   <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
        subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
        the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with thef sign of
        the Holy Cross.</item>
   <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
   <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
   <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign
of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
 </list></p>
```

Schematron \<sch:rule context="tei:list[@type='gloss']"\> \<sch:assert test="tei:label"\>The content of a "gloss" list should include a sequence of one or more pairs of a label element followed by an item element\</sch:assert\> \</sch:rule\>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divTop"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
```

```
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <sequence minOccurs="1"
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="item"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
     <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
      <elementRef key="headLabel"
       minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="headItem"
       minOccurs="0"/>
      <sequence minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <elementRef key="label"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="item"/>
      <classRef key="model.global"
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      </sequence>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
    <sequence minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
     <classRef key="model.global"
      minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </sequence>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element list
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   attribute type
   {
      "gloss" | "index" | "instructions" | "litany" | "syllogism"
   }?,
   (
      ( tei_model.divTop | tei_model.global )*,
      (
        ( tei_item, tei_model.global* )+
       | (
           tei_headLabel?,
           tei_headItem?,
           ( tei_label, tei_model.global*, tei_item, tei_model.global* )+
         )
      ),
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
```

\<listApp\> (list of apparatus entries) contains a list of apparatus entries. [«#TCAPLK»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.sortable
(*@sortKey*) att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation
layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem listApp rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

textcrit: app listApp

Note <listApp> elements would normally be located in the <back> part of a document, but they
may appear elsewhere.

Example In the following example from the exegetical Yasna, the base text is encoded in the
<body> of the document, and two separate <listApp> elements are used in the <back>,
containing variant readings written in different scripts.

```
<body>
 <div>
  <lg type="stanza" xml:id="Y-36.01"
  xml:lang="pal-Avst" rend="italic">
  <l xml:id="Y-36.01_L-1">
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-01">ahiiā</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-02">ʊβā</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-03">āʊrō</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-04">vərəzə̄nā</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-05">paouruiiē</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-06">pairijasāmaiδē</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-07">mazdā</w>
   <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-08">ahurā</w>
  </l>
<!-- ... -->
  </lg>
 </div>
</body>
<!-- ... -->
<back>
 <div>
  <listApp xml:id="CA_Y-36"
  xml:lang="pal-Avst">
  <head>Variants from witnesses in Avestan script</head>
  <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-01">
   <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ahiiā</rdg>
  </app>
  <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-02">
   <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ʊβā</rdg>
```

```
     </app>
     <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-03">
      <rdg wit="#Pt4 #J2 #M1">āʊ̆rō</rdg>
      <rdg wit="#F2">āʊ̆rōi</rdg>
     </app>
<!-- ... -->
   </listApp>
   <listApp xml:id="CA_PY-36"
   xml:lang="pal-Phlv">
   <head>Variants from witnesses written in Pahlavi script</head>
   <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-01">
    <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ʾytwnʾ</rdg>
   </app>
   <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-02">
    <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ʾwʾ</rdg>
   </app>
   <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-03">
    <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ḤNʾ</rdg>
   </app>
<!-- ... -->
   </listApp>
  </div>
 </back>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="app"/>
   <elementRef key="listApp"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listApp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( tei_model.headLike*, ( tei_app | tei_listApp )+ )
}
```

<listBibl> (citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind. [3.11.1. Methods of Encoding Bibliographic References and Lists of References 2.2.7. The Source Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable
(@*sortKey*) att.declarable (@*default*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.biblLike model.frontPart

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg
relatedItem said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additional additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance signatures
source summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org person personGrp place state

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph front

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb gb head lb listBibl milestone pb

header: biblFull

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listRelation relation

transcr: fw

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <head>Works consulted</head>
 <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
     Literature in English (Yale, 1990)
  </bibl>
 <biblStruct>
  <analytic>
   <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
  </analytic>
  <monogr>
   <title>The Penny Histories</title>
   <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
   <imprint>
    <publisher>OUP</publisher>
    <date>1968</date>
   </imprint>
  </monogr>
 </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
```

```
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <elementRef key="relation"/>
       <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
      </alternate>
     </sequence>
   </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listBibl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.milestoneLike )+,
      ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
   )
}
```

\<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text. [2.6. The Revision Description 11.7. Identifying Changes and Revisions]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

@ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child \<change> elements is to be considered significant or not

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Default true

Contained by: header: creation listChange revisionDesc

May contain

header: change listChange

Note When this element appears within the \<creation> element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text. When it appears within the \<revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

Example

```
<revisionDesc>
 <listChange>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
```

```
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <creation>
  <listChange ordered="true">
   <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further
revisions by
          Goethe using ink</change>
   <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
          probably at a later stage</change>
  </listChange>
 </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  <elementRef key="change"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listChange
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute ordered { text }?,
   ( tei_listChange | tei_change )+
}
```

<listEvent> (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information
about an identifiable event. [13.3.1. Basic Principles]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*,
@*subtype*) att.declarable (@*default*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*)

Member of model.eventLike model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation
     layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: listEvent org person personGrp place

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

namesdates: event listEvent listRelation relation

Example

```
<listEvent>
 <head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head>
 <event xml:id="event01" when="1861-09-19">
  <label>Barbourville</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of
        the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox
        County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky
Confederate
        Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory
in
        the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who
        rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the
invasion,
        which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of
          Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc>
 </event>
 <event xml:id="event02" when="1861-10-21">
  <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp
        Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil
        War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County,
Kentucky
        during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive.
The
        battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and
marked
        the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of
Kentucky.</desc>
 </event>
 <event xml:id="event03" from="1864-06-11"
  to="1864-06-12">
  <label>Cynthiana</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement
        during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12,
1864,
        in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
        Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
        Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
        raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
 </event>
</listEvent>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
<classRef key="model.headLike"
 minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
<alternate minOccurs="1"
 maxOccurs="unbounded">
 <elementRef key="event"/>
 <elementRef key="listEvent"/>
</alternate>
<alternate minOccurs="0"
 maxOccurs="unbounded">
 <elementRef key="relation"/>
 <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
</alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listEvent
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_event | tei_listEvent )+,
      ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
   )
}
```

<listNym> (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing. [13.3.5. Names and Nyms]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declarable (*@default*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: listNym

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listNym listRelation nym relation

Note   The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient.

Example

```
<listNym type="floral">
 <nym xml:id="ROSE">
  <form>Rose</form>
 </nym>
 <nym xml:id="DAISY">
  <form>Daisy</form>
  <etym>Contraction of <mentioned>day's eye</mentioned></etym>
 </nym>
 <nym xml:id="HTHR">
  <form>Heather</form>
 </nym>
</listNym>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="nym"/>
   <elementRef key="listNym"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listNym
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_nym | tei_listNym )+,
      ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
   )
}
```

\<listOrg\> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

Module   namesdates

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,

@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declarable (@*default*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

corpus: particDesc

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: listOrg org

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listOrg listRelation org relation

Note   The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

Example

```
<listOrg>
 <head>Libyans</head>
 <org>
  <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>
  <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the
Egyptians, but
       use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring
made of
       bronze [...]</desc>
 </org>
 <org>
  <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>
  <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and
go up
       the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates
from the
       palms [...]</desc>
 </org>
 <org>
  <orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
  <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have
no
       weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves.
[...]</desc>
<!-- ... -->
 </org>
</listOrg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
```

```
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="org"/>
   <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listOrg
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_org | tei_listOrg )+,
      ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
   )
}
```

\<listPerson\> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.declarable (*@default*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

corpus: particDesc

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: listPerson org

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation

Note   The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

Example

```
<listPerson type="respondents">
 <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
 <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
 <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
 <listRelation>
  <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
   mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
 </listRelation>
</listPerson>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPerson
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPerson )+,
      ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
   )
}
```

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them. [2.2.7. The Source Description 13.3.4. Places]

Module   namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declarable (@*default*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

corpus: settingDesc

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: listPlace org place

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPlace listRelation place relation

Example

```
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
 <place>
  <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
 </place>
 <place>
  <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
 </place>
</listPlace>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="relation"/>
   <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPlace
{
```

```
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    (
        tei_model.headLike*,
        ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace )+,
        ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )*
    )
}
```

\<listPrefixDef\> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc listPrefixDef

May contain

header: listPrefixDef prefixDef

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a \<p\> element.

```
<listPrefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="psn"
  matchPattern="([A-Z]+)"
  replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
  <p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
        prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
        elements in the personography.xml file.
        For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
        dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
    </p>
 </prefixDef>
 <prefixDef ident="bibl"
  matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*)"
  replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
  <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
        expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
        bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
    </p>
 </prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="prefixDef"/>
  <elementRef key="listPrefixDef"/>
```

```
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listPrefixDef
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_prefixDef | tei_listPrefixDef )+
}
```

<listRelation> provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl listBibl

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation

May contain

core: head p

linking: ab

namesdates: listRelation relation

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements.

Example

```
<listPerson>
 <person xml:id="pp1">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
 </person>
 <person xml:id="pp2">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
 </person>
<!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here -->
</listPerson>
<listRelation type="personal">
 <relation name="parent" active="#pp1 #pp2"
  passive="#pp3 #pp4"/>
 <relation name="spouse" mutual="#pp1 #pp2"/>
</listRelation>
<listRelation type="social">
 <relation name="employer" active="#pp1"
  passive="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/>
</listRelation>
```

The persons with identifiers pp1 and p2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7.

Example

```
<listRelation>
 <p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</p>
</listRelation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="relation"/>
    <elementRef key="listRelation"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listRelation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      ( tei_model.pLike | ( tei_relation | tei_listRelation )+ )
   )
}
```

<listTranspose> supplies a list of transpositions, each of which is indicated at some point in a document typically by means of metamarks. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.global.meta model.profileDescPart

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal profileDesc scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

transcr: transpose

Example

```
<listTranspose>
 <transpose>
  <ptr target="#ib02"/>
  <ptr target="#ib01"/>
 </transpose>
</listTranspose>
```

This example might be used for a source document which indicates in some way that the elements identified by ib02 and code ib01 should be read in that order (ib02 followed by ib01), rather than in the reading order in which they are presented in the source.

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="transpose" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listTranspose { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_transpose+ }
```

\<listWit\> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem listWit rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head

textcrit: listWit witness

Note   May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements.

The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus.

Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses, such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart> and <witEnd> elements described in section TCAPMI.

Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

Example

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
 <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
     Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
 <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
     (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/>)</witness>
</listWit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="witness"/>
   <elementRef key="listWit"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element listWit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
```

```
    ( tei_model.headLike?, ( tei_witness | tei_listWit )+ )
}
```

\<localName\> (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain Character data only

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name **entity** is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

Example

```
<localName>daikanwa</localName>
<localName>entity</localName>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration `element localName { tei_att.global.attributes, text }`

\<location\> defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address. [13.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))

Member of model.placeStateLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent

funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

certainty: precision

core: address bibl biblStruct desc email label listBibl measure measureGrp note num

header: biblFull

msdescription: depth dim height msDesc width

namesdates: bloc country district geo geogFeat geogName offset placeName region settlement

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<place>
 <placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName>
 <location>
  <geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo>
 </location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place xml:id="BGbuilding" type="building">
 <placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName>
 <location>
  <country key="FR"/>
  <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
  <district type="arrondissement">IIème</district>
  <district type="quartier">Perrache</district>
  <placeName type="street">
   <num>30</num>, Cours de Verdun</placeName>
 </location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place type="imaginary">
 <placeName>Atlantis</placeName>
 <location>
  <offset>beyond</offset>
  <placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName></placeName>
 </location>
</place>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
```

```
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="precision"/>
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"/>
    <classRef key="model.offsetLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.addressLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element location
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   (
      tei_precision    | tei_model.labelLike    | tei_model.placeNamePart    | tei_model.
}
```

<locus> defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

    @scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified by pointing to some <foliation> element defining it, or to some other equivalent resource.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.pointer

    @from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form, typically a page number.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.word

    @to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form, typically as a page number.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.word

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting

mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout locusGrp material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note The *target* attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <locus> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global *facs* attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the *target* attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The *facs* attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <surface>, <zone> element, <graphic>, or <binaryObject> elements.

Note When the location being defined consists of a single page, use the *from* and *to* attributes with an identical value. When no clear endpoint is given the *from* attribute should be used without *to*. For example, if the manuscript description being transcribed has 'p. 3ff' as the locus.

Example

```
<!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1">
 <locus target="#F1r #F1v #F2r" from="1r"
  to="2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus>
 <author>Ben Jonson</author>
 <title>Ode to himself</title>
 <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric>
 <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit>
 <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit>
 <bibl>
  <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl>
</msItem>
<!-- within transcription ... -->
<pb xml:id="F1r"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F1v"/>
<!-- ... -->
<pb xml:id="F2r"/>
<!-- ... -->
```

Example The *facs* attribute is available globally when the transcr module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:

```
<msItem>
 <locus facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg
images/10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus>
 <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
 <bibl>
  <title>IMEV</title>
  <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
 </bibl>
</msItem>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element locus
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   attribute from { text }?,
   attribute to { text }?,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

<locusGrp> groups a number of locations which together form a distinct but discontinuous item within a manuscript or manuscript part, according to a specific foliation. [10.3.5. References to Locations within a Manuscript]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which all the locations contained by the group are specified by pointing to some <foliation> element defining it, or to some other equivalent resource.
Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

msdescription: locus

Example

```
<msItem>
 <locusGrp>
  <locus from="13" to="26">Bl. 13--26</locus>
  <locus from="37" to="58">37--58</locus>
  <locus from="82" to="96">82--96</locus>
 </locusGrp>
 <note>Stücke von Daniel Ecklin's Reise ins h. Land</note>
</msItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="locus" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element locusGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute scheme { text }?,
   tei_locus+
}
```

<m> (morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@baseForm supplies the morpheme's base form.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.word

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

character data

Note The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of morpheme, taking values such as clitic, prefix, stem, etc. as appropriate.

Example

```
<w type="adjective">
 <w type="noun">
  <m type="prefix" baseForm="con">com</m>
  <m type="root">fort</m>
 </w>
 <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>
```

Content model `<content/>`

Schema Declaration

```
element m
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute baseForm { text }?,
   ( text | model.gLike | model.hiLike | seg | m | c | model.global )*
}
```

\<mapping\> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the *type* attribute. [5.2. Markup Constructs for Representation of Characters and Glyphs]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Contained by

gaiji: glyph

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note Suggested values for the *type* attribute include `exact` for exact equivalences, `uppercase` for uppercase equivalences, `lowercase` for lowercase equivalences, and `simplified` for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph>element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element mapping
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

<material> contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The *ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally.

Example

```
<physDesc>
 <p>
  <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a
  <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element material
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<measure> contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.measurement (@*unit*, @*quantity*, @*commodity*)

@type specifies the type of measurement in any convenient typology.
   Status Optional
   Datatype teidata.enumerated

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
      offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
      secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

      character data

Example

```
<measure type="weight">
 <num>2</num> pounds of flesh</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>
```

Example

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead"
 commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count"
 commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count"
 commodity="tulips">a yellow tulip</measure>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element measure
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.measurement.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<measureGrp> (measure group) contains a group of dimensional specifications which relate to
      the same object, for example the height and width of a manuscript page. [10.3.4.
      Dimensions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
      (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
      @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
      (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.measurement
      (@*unit*, @*quantity*, @*commodity*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email
      emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp
      meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic
      soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: measure measureGrp num

gaiji: g

msdescription: depth dim height width

namesdates: geo

      character data

Example

```
<measureGrp type="leaves" unit="mm">
 <height scope="range">157-160</height>
 <width quantity="105"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="ruledArea" unit="mm">
 <height scope="most" quantity="90"/>
 <width scope="most" quantity="48"/>
</measureGrp>
<measureGrp type="box" unit="in">
 <height quantity="12"/>
 <width quantity="10"/>
 <depth quantity="6"/>
</measureGrp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.measureLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element measureGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.measurement.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

```
    ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.measureLike )*
}
```

\<media\> indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc.
[3.9. Graphics and Other Non-textual Components]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.resourced (@*url*) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.timed (@*start*, @*end*) (att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@*dur*)) (att.duration.iso (@*dur-iso*))) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type
Derived from att.internetMedia
Status Required
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: glyph

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage facsimile fw metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surplus zone

May contain

core: desc

Note The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected.

The *mimeType* attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the *url* attribute.

Example

```
<figure>
 <media mimeType="image/png" url="fig1.png"/>
 <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
 <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
foreground, and a
      series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<media mimeType="audio/wav"
 url="dingDong.wav" dur="PT10S">
 <desc>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</desc>
</media>
```

Example

```
<media mimeType="video/mp4"
 url="clip45.mp4" dur="PT45M" width="500px">
 <desc>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500
      px wide</desc>
</media>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element media
{
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.media.attribute.width,
   tei_att.media.attribute.height,
   tei_att.media.attribute.scale,
   tei_att.resourced.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.timed.attributes,
   attribute mimeType { list { + } },
   tei_model.descLike*
}
```

<meeting> contains the formalized descriptive title for a meeting or conference, for use in a
  bibliographic description for an item derived from such a meeting, or as a heading or
  preamble to publications emanating from it. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
  (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
  @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
  (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical
  (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.divWrapper model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl lg list monogr

figures: figure table

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: body div front group

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Example

```
<div>
 <meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German Textual
Criticism, Aachen,
    June 1998.</meeting>
 <list type="attendance">
  <head>List of Participants</head>
  <item>
   <persName>...</persName>
  </item>
  <item>
   <persName>...</persName>
  </item>
<!--...-->
 </list>
 <p>...</p>
</div>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element meeting
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.limitedContent}
```

<mentioned> marks words or phrases mentioned, not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
There is thus a
striking accentual difference between a verbal form like
<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss> accented on the second
syllable of the
word, and its participial derivative
<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>
<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss> accented on the last.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element mentioned { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<metamark> contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document. [11.3.4.2. Metamarks]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.spanning (@*spanTo*) att.placement (@*place*) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

@function describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the metamark.
　　Status Optional
　　Datatype teidata.word

@target identifies one or more elements to which the metamark applies.
　　Status Optional
　　Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem

musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element metamark
{
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute function { text }?,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<milestone\> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.milestoneUnit (*@unit*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of   model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain   Empty element

Note   For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc.

The order in which \<milestone\> elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Content model   ` <content></content> `

Schema Declaration

```
element milestone
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
    tei_att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.edition.attributes,
    tei_att.spanning.attributes,
    tei_att.breaking.attributes,
    empty
}
```

<mod> represents any kind of modification identified within a single document. [11.3.4.1. Generic Modification]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.spanning (@*spanTo*)

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent
listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region
roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<mod type="subst">
 <add>pleasing</add>
 <del>agreable</del>
</mod>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element mod
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<monogr> (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or
journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [3.11.2.1.
Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author biblScope editor imprint meeting note ptr ref respStmt textLang title

header: authority availability edition extent funder idno sponsor

textcrit: witDetail

Note May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order.

The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item.

Example

```
<biblStruct>
 <analytic>
  <author>Chesnutt, David</author>
  <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>
 </analytic>
 <monogr>
  <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>
  <imprint>
   <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>
  </imprint>
  <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>
  <biblScope unit="page" from="377" to="380">377-380</biblScope>
 </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

Example

```
<biblStruct type="book">
 <monogr>
  <author>
   <persName>
    <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>
    <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>
   </persName>
  </author>
  <title type="main" level="m">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>
  <imprint>
   <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
   <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>
   <date>1914</date>
  </imprint>
 </monogr>
 <series>
  <title type="main" level="s">Columbia University Contributions to
     Anthropology</title>
  <biblScope unit="volume">4</biblScope>
 </series>
</biblStruct>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <elementRef key="author"/>
     <elementRef key="editor"/>
     <elementRef key="meeting"/>
     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="author"/>
     <elementRef key="editor"/>
     <elementRef key="meeting"/>
     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
    </alternate>
    <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
```

347

```
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
     <elementRef key="idno"/>
     <elementRef key="textLang"/>
     <elementRef key="editor"/>
     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="title"/>
     <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
     <elementRef key="idno"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="textLang"/>
     <elementRef key="author"/>
     <elementRef key="editor"/>
     <elementRef key="meeting"/>
     <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="authority"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <elementRef key="availability"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="edition"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    <elementRef key="editor"/>
    <elementRef key="sponsor"/>
    <elementRef key="funder"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
  <elementRef key="imprint"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="imprint"/>
   <elementRef key="extent"/>
   <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element monogr
{
```

```
      tei_att.global.attributes,
      (
        (
          (
             ( tei_author | tei_editor | tei_meeting | tei_respStmt ),
             ( tei_author | tei_editor | tei_meeting | tei_respStmt )*,
             tei_title+,
             (
                tei_model.ptrLike              | tei_idno              | tei_textLang
             )
          | (
               ( tei_title | tei_model.ptrLike | tei_idno )+,
               (
                  tei_textLang              | tei_author              | tei_editor
               )
          | ( tei_authority, tei_idno )
        )?,
        tei_availability*,
        tei_model.noteLike*,
        (
          tei_edition,
          (
             tei_idno          | tei_model.ptrLike          | tei_editor          | tei_sp
        )*,
        tei_imprint,
        ( tei_imprint | tei_extent | tei_biblScope )*
      )
}
```

<msContents> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.msExcerpt (*@defective*)

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this object by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by
msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart
May contain
core: p textLang
linking: ab
msdescription: msItem msItemStruct summary
Note Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.
Example

349

```
<msContents class="#sermons">
 <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p>
</msContents>
```

Example

```
<msContents>
 <msItem n="1">
  <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus>
  <title>An ABC</title>
  <bibl>
   <title>IMEV</title>
   <biblScope>239</biblScope>
  </bibl>
 </msItem>
 <msItem n="2">
  <locus>fols. 7v-8v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="frm">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
  <bibl>
   <title>IMEV</title>
   <biblScope>3747</biblScope>
  </bibl>
 </msItem>
 <msItem n="3">
  <locus>fol. 8v</locus>
  <title>Truth</title>
  <bibl>
   <title>IMEV</title>
   <biblScope>809</biblScope>
  </bibl>
 </msItem>
 <msItem n="4">
  <locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
  <bibl>
   <title>IMEV</title>
   <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
  </bibl>
 </msItem>
 <msItem n="5">
  <locus>fols. 10v-11v</locus>
  <title xml:lang="la">De amico ad amicam</title>
  <title xml:lang="la">Responcio</title>
  <bibl>
   <title>IMEV</title>
   <biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
  </bibl>
 </msItem>
 <msItem n="6">
  <locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
  <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
  <note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
throughout</note>
 </msItem>
</msContents>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
      <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="textLang" minOccurs="0"/>
      <elementRef key="titlePage"
       minOccurs="0"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <elementRef key="msItem"/>
       <elementRef key="msItemStruct"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msContents
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   attribute class { list { + } }?,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
    | (
         tei_summary?,
         tei_textLang?,
         titlePage?,
         ( tei_msItem | tei_msItemStruct )*
      )
   )
}
```

<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object. [10.1. Overview]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declaring (@*decls*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l listBibl meeting note orig p q quote ref reg relatedItem said sic stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage taxonomy typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

namesdates: event location org person personGrp place state

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: head p

linking: ab

msdescription: additional history msContents msFrag msIdentifier msPart physDesc

Example

```
<msDesc>
 <msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>
 </msIdentifier>
 <msContents>
  <msItem>
   <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>
   <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>
  </msItem>
 </msContents>
 <physDesc>
  <objectDesc>
   <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx
        28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p>
   <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>
   <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44
        folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the
        remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>
  </objectDesc>
 </physDesc>
</msDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="msContents"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="physDesc"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="additional"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
     <elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     <elementRef key="msFrag" minOccurs="0"
      maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   (
      tei_msIdentifier,
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
         tei_model.pLike+
       | (
            tei_msContents?,
            tei_physDesc?,
            tei_history?,
            tei_additional?,
            ( tei_msPart* | tei_msFrag* )
         )
      )
   )
}
```

<msFrag> (manuscript fragment) contains information about a fragment of a scattered manuscript now held as a single unit or bound into a larger manuscript. [10.11. Manuscript Fragments]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc

May contain

core: head p

linking: ab

msdescription: additional altIdentifier history msContents msIdentifier physDesc

Example

```
<msDesc>
 <msIdentifier>
  <msName xml:lang="la">Codex Suprasliensis</msName>
 </msIdentifier>
 <msFrag>
  <msIdentifier>
   <settlement>Ljubljana</settlement>
   <repository>Narodna in univerzitetna knjiznica</repository>
   <idno>MS Kopitar 2</idno>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
   <summary>Contains ff. 10 to 42 only</summary>
  </msContents>
 </msFrag>
 <msFrag>
```

```
   <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Warszawa</settlement>
    <repository>Biblioteka Narodowa</repository>
    <idno>BO 3.201</idno>
   </msIdentifier>
  </msFrag>
  <msFrag>
   <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Sankt-Peterburg</settlement>
    <repository>Rossiiskaia natsional'naia biblioteka</repository>
    <idno>Q.p.I.72</idno>
   </msIdentifier>
  </msFrag>
 </msDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>
   <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="msContents"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="physDesc"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="additional"
     minOccurs="0"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msFrag
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_altIdentifier | tei_msIdentifier ),
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
         tei_model.pLike+
       | ( tei_msContents?, tei_physDesc?, tei_history?, tei_additional? )
      )
   )
}
```

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl

msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart

May contain

header: idno

msdescription: altIdentifier collection institution msName repository

namesdates: bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
 <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
 <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
 <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

Schematron <s:report test="not(parent::tei:msPart) and (local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or normalize-space(.)=")">An msIdentifier must contain either a repository or location of some type, or a manuscript name</s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.placeNamePart"
    expand="sequenceOptional"/>
   <elementRef key="institution"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="repository"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="collection"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="idno" minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="msName"/>
   <elementRef key="altIdentifier"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msIdentifier
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    (
        (
```

```
                    tei_placeName?,
                    tei_bloc?,
                    tei_country?,
                    tei_region?,
                    tei_district?,
                    tei_settlement?,
                    tei_geogName?,
                    tei_institution?,
                    tei_repository?,
                    tei_collection*,
                    tei_idno?
                ),
                ( tei_msName | tei_altIdentifier )*
            )
    }
```

<msItem> (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.msExcerpt (@*defective*)

   @class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.

   Status Optional

   Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msContents msItem

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: author bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb cit editor gap gb graphic index lb listBibl meeting milestone note p pb quote respStmt textLang title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: biblFull funder idno principal sponsor

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msDesc msItem msItemStruct rubric

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Example

```
<msItem class="#saga">
 <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus>
 <title>Agrip af Noregs konunga sögum</title>
 <incipit>regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> setiho
```

```
    <gap reason="illegible" extent="7"/>sc
       heim se<ex>m</ex> þio</incipit>
  <explicit>h<ex>on</ex> hev<ex>er</ex>
   <ex>oc</ex>þa buit hesta .ij. aNan viþ
       fé enh<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> aNan til
       reiþ<ex>ar</ex></explicit>
  <textLang mainLang="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</textLang>
 </msItem>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="locus"/>
   <elementRef key="locusGrp"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.titlepagePart"/>
   <classRef key="model.msItemPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msItem
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   attribute class { list { + } }?,
   (
      ( tei_locus | tei_locusGrp )*,
      (
        tei_model.pLike+
      | ( tei_model.titlepagePart | tei_model.msItemPart | tei_model.global )+
      )
   )
}
```

<msItemStruct> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.msExcerpt (@*defective*)

357

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item by pointing to other elements or resources defining the classification concerned.

    Status Optional

    Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct

May contain

core: author bibl biblStruct listBibl note p respStmt textLang title

linking: ab

msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msItemStruct rubric

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<msItemStruct n="2" defective="false"
 class="#biblComm">
 <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-97v</locus>
 <author>Apringius de Beja</author>
 <title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">Tractatus in Apocalypsin</title>
 <rubric>Incipit Trac<supplied reason="omitted">ta</supplied>tus
     in apoka<lb/>lipsin eruditissimi uiri <lb/> Apringi ep<ex>iscop</ex>i
     Pacensis eccl<ex>esi</ex>e</rubric>
 <finalRubric>EXPLIC<ex>IT</ex> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS
     QVA<ex>M</ex> EXPOSVIT DOM<lb/>NVS APRINGIUS EP<ex>ISCOPU</ex>S.
     DEO GR<ex>ACI</ex>AS AGO. FI<lb/>NITO LABORE ISTO.</finalRubric>
 <bibl>
   <ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900">Apringius</ref>, ed.
Férotin</bibl>
 <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItemStruct>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="locus"/>
   <elementRef key="locusGrp"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="author" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="rubric" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="incipit" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="msItemStruct"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <elementRef key="explicit"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="finalRubric"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="colophon"
```

```
        minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="decoNote"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="listBibl"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <elementRef key="bibl"/>
       <elementRef key="biblStruct"/>
      </alternate>
      <elementRef key="filiation"
       minOccurs="0"/>
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <elementRef key="textLang"
       minOccurs="0"/>
     </sequence>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msItemStruct
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   attribute class { list { + } }?,
   (
      ( tei_locus | tei_locusGrp )?,
      (
        tei_model.pLike+
      | (
            tei_author*,
            tei_respStmt*,
            tei_title*,
            tei_rubric?,
            tei_incipit?,
            tei_msItemStruct*,
            tei_explicit?,
            tei_finalRubric?,
            tei_colophon*,
            tei_decoNote*,
            tei_listBibl*,
            ( tei_bibl | tei_biblStruct )*,
            tei_filiation?,
            tei_model.noteLike*,
            tei_textLang?
        )
      )
   )
}
```

<msName> (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an 'ocellus nominum', or nickname. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

　　　character data

Example

```
<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>
```

Content model <content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>

Schema Declaration

```
element msName
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

\<msPart\> (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, which is now part of a composite manuscript. [10.10. Manuscript Parts]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

core: head p

linking: ab

msdescription: additional history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc

Note   As this last example shows, for compatibility reasons the identifier of a manuscript part may be supplied as a simple \<altIdentifier\> rather than using the more structured \<msIdentifier\> element. This usage is however deprecated.

Example

```
<msPart>
 <msIdentifier>
  <idno>A</idno>
  <altIdentifier type="catalog">
   <collection>Becker</collection>
   <idno>48, Nr. 145</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
  <altIdentifier type="catalog">
   <collection>Wiener Liste</collection>
   <idno>4°5</idno>
  </altIdentifier>
```

```
   </msIdentifier>
   <head>
    <title xml:lang="la">Gregorius: Homiliae in Ezechielem</title>
    <origPlace key="tgn_7008085">Weissenburg (?)</origPlace>
    <origDate notBefore="0801"
     notAfter="0815">IX. Jh., Anfang</origDate>
   </head>
  </msPart>
```

Example

```
  <msDesc>
   <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Amiens</settlement>
    <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
    <idno>MS 3</idno>
    <msName>Maurdramnus Bible</msName>
   </msIdentifier>
   <msContents>
    <summary xml:lang="lat">Miscellany of various texts; Prudentius,
Psychomachia; Physiologus de natura animantium</summary>
    <textLang mainLang="lat">Latin</textLang>
   </msContents>
   <physDesc>
    <objectDesc form="composite_manuscript"/>
   </physDesc>
   <msPart>
    <msIdentifier>
     <idno>ms. 10066-77 ff. 140r-156v</idno>
    </msIdentifier>
    <msContents>
     <summary xml:lang="lat">Physiologus</summary>
     <textLang mainLang="lat">Latin</textLang>
    </msContents>
   </msPart>
   <msPart>
    <msIdentifier>
     <altIdentifier>
      <idno>MS 6</idno>
     </altIdentifier>
    </msIdentifier>
<!-- other information specific to this part here -->
   </msPart>
<!-- more parts here -->
  </msDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="msIdentifier"/>
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="msContents"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="physDesc"
     minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="history" minOccurs="0"/>
    <elementRef key="additional"
```

361

```
   minOccurs="0"/>
  <elementRef key="msPart" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
 </alternate>
</sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element msPart
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_msIdentifier,
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
         tei_model.pLike+
      | (
            tei_msContents?,
            tei_physDesc?,
            tei_history?,
            tei_additional?,
            tei_msPart*
        )
      )
   )
}
```

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<musicNotation>
 <p>Square notation of 4-line red staves.</p>
</musicNotation>
```

Example

```
<musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall type.
 </musicNotation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element musicNotation { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

\<name\> (name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase. [3.5.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.nameLike.agent

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure

meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with \<persName>, \<placeName>, or \<orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

Example

```
<name type="person">Thomas Hoccleve</name>
<name type="place">Villingaholt</name>
<name type="org">Vetus Latina Institut</name>
<name type="person" ref="#HOC001">Occleve</name>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element name
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<namespace> supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module   header

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@name   specifies the full formal name of the namespace concerned.

   Status   Required

   Datatype   teidata.namespace

Contained by: header: tagsDecl

May contain

header: tagUsage

Example

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used only to mark English words
     italicized in the copy text </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="tagUsage" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element namespace
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute name { text },
   tei_tagUsage+
}
```

<normalization> indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **silent** normalization made silently[Default]

markup normalization represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
 <normalization method="markup">
  <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been
normalized, to modern
        20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element
has been used to
        enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original
and new values
        respectively. ... </p>
 </normalization>
 <normalization method="silent">
  <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized
to zero spaces;
        spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
 </normalization>
 <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
  <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on
Websters 9th
        Collegiate dictionary.</p>
 </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element normalization
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
```

366

```
      tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<notatedMusic> encodes the presence of music notation in a text [«#FTNM»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

core: binaryObject desc graphic label ptr ref

linking: seg

Note It is possible to describe the content of the notation using elements from the model.labelLike class and it is possible to point to an external representation using elements from model.ptrLike. It is possible to specify the location of digital objects representing the notated music in other media such as images or audio-visual files. The encoder's interpretation of the correspondence between the notated music and these digital objects is not encoded explicitly. We recommend the use of graphic and binaryObject mainly as a fallback mechanism when the notated music format is not displayable by the application using the encoding. The alignment of encoded notated music, images carrying the notation, and audio files is a complex matter for which we refer the encoder to other formats and specifications such as MPEG-SMR.

Example

```
<notatedMusic>
 <ptr target="bar1.xml"/>
 <graphic url="bar1.jpg"/>
 <desc>First bar of Chopin's Scherzo No.3 Op.39</desc>
</notatedMusic>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <elementRef key="graphic"/>
  <elementRef key="binaryObject"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element notatedMusic
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.labelLike    | tei_model.ptrLike    | tei_graphic    | tei_binaryObject
}
```

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. Notes and Simple Annotation 2.2.6. The Notes
Statement 3.11.2.8. Notes and Statement of Language 9.3.5.4. Notes within Entries]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.placement
(*@place*) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written
(*@hand*)

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the
note.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote
or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated
may however be used instead (e.g. 'page 218, lines 3–4'). The *anchored*
attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by
symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an
explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that
the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note.

If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the *n* attribute.

@targetEnd points to the end of the span to which the note is attached, if the note is not embedded in the text at that point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1−∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note This attribute is retained for backwards compatibility; it may be removed at a subsequent release of the Guidelines. The recommended way of pointing to a span of elements is by means of the range function of XPointer, as further described in 16.2.4.6. range().

Member of model.correspActionPart model.correspContextPart model.correspDescPart model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: glyph

header: authority change classCode correspAction correspContext correspDesc distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence notesStmt principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions adminInfo altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district event floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

```
And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly <note place="bottom" type="gloss"
 resp="#MDMH">
 <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
   distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
   the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
   confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
 <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
 <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.
```

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI header:

```
<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
 <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
 <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>
```

Example The global *n* attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

```
Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
   alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in
fact, a reference to
   Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. </note> is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element note
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   attribute anchored { text }?,
   attribute targetEnd { list { + } }?,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description. [2.2.6. The Notes Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note relatedItem

textcrit: witDetail

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

Example

```
<notesStmt>
 <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
 <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
  <elementRef key="relatedItem"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element notesStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.noteLike | tei_relatedItem )+
}
```

<num> (number) contains a number, written in any form. [3.5.3. Numbers and Measures]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)

> @type   indicates the type of numeric value.
>> *Status*   Optional
>>
>> *Datatype*   teidata.enumerated
>>
>> *Suggested values include:*   **cardinal**   absolute number, e.g. 21, 21.5
>>
>>> **ordinal**   ordinal number, e.g. 21st
>>>
>>> **fraction**   fraction, e.g. one half or three-quarters
>>>
>>> **percentage**   a percentage
>>
>> *Note*   If a different typology is desired, other values can be used for this attribute.
>
> @value   supplies the value of the number in standard form.
>> *Status*   Optional
>>
>> *Datatype*   teidata.numeric
>>
>> *Values*   a numeric value.
>>
>> *Note*   The standard form used is defined by the TEI datatype data.numeric.

Member of   model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter 18. Feature Structures. The \<num\> element is intended for use in simple applications.

Example

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num> on
  my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday</p>
<p>Light travels at <num value="3E10">3×10<hi rend="sup">10</hi></num> cm
per second.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element num
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.ranging.attributes,
   attribute type { "cardinal" | "ordinal" | "fraction" | "percentage" }?,
   attribute value { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<nym\> (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or name component of any kind. [13.3.5. Names and Nyms]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

@parts points to constituent nyms

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by *namesdates:* listNym nym

373

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: nym

Example

```
<nym xml:id="J452">
 <form>
  <orth xml:lang="en-US">Ian</orth>
  <orth xml:lang="en-x-Scots">Iain</orth>
 </form>
</nym>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.entryPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="nym" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element nym
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute parts { list { + } }?,
   ( tei_model.entryPart*, tei_model.pLike*, tei_nym* )
}
```

\<objectDesc\> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@form a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Note Definitions for the terms used may typically be provided by a \<valList\> element in the project schema specification.

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

374

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: layoutDesc supportDesc

Example

```
<objectDesc form="codex">
 <supportDesc material="mixed">
  <p>Early modern
   <material>parchment</material> and
   <material>paper</material>.</p>
 </supportDesc>
 <layoutDesc>
  <layout ruledLines="25 32"/>
 </layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="supportDesc"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="layoutDesc"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element objectDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute form { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_supportDesc?, tei_layoutDesc? ) )
}
```

<objectType> contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to. [10.3.2. Material and Object Type]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting

mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The *ref* attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.

Example

```
<physDesc>
 <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth
binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
 <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>.
  </p>
</physDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element objectType
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<offset> marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.offsetLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<placeName key="NRPA1">
 <offset>50 metres below the summit of</offset>
 <geogName>
  <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>
  <name>Sinai</name>
 </geogName>
</placeName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element offset
{
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,

@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*,
@*subtype*) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*,
@*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.sortable
(@*sortKey*)

@role specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace
>
> *Note* Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using
> arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, family group, or political party,
> each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions
> will typically be provided by a <valList> element in the project schema
> specification.

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

corpus: particDesc

namesdates: listOrg listPerson org

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb desc gb head label lb listBibl milestone name note p pb rs

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: addName bloc country district event forename genName geogFeat geogName listEvent
listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset org orgName persName person personGrp place
placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: fw

Example

```
<org xml:id="JAMs">
 <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
 <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard
       Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden
submarine, the
  <name>Leif Ericson</name></desc>
 <bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>
 </bibl>
</org>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
```

```
        <classRef key="model.nameLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
        <classRef key="model.orgPart"/>
        <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
       </alternate>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
       <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
       <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
       <elementRef key="link"/>
      </alternate>
      <classRef key="model.personLike"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </sequence>
    </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element org
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
         tei_model.pLike*
       | (
            tei_model.labelLike        | tei_model.nameLike        | tei_model.placeL
         ),
         ( tei_model.noteLike | tei_model.biblLike | tei_linkGrp | tei_link )*,
         tei_model.personLike*
      )
   )
}
```

\<orgName\> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2. Organizational Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.nameLike.agent

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt
rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary">
 <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society</orgName>
[...]
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element orgName
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.datable.attributes,
    tei_att.editLike.attributes,
    tei_att.personal.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of   model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig></l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
 </choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
 </choice></l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element orig { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
```

<origDate> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1. Origination]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.editLike (~~evidence~~, @*instant*) att.dimensions (@precision, @unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@evidence *Status* Optional

Datatype 1–6 occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **lettering** Text dated palaeographically

nomenclature Text dated by nomenclature or onomastics

prosopography Text dated by known persons named or implied within it

reign Text dated by the reign of an emperor or other ruler

titulature Text dated by the use of official titles

internal-date Text dated by explicit internal date

context Archaeological, epigraphic, iconographic or other context of the text support

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<origDate notBefore="-0300"
 notAfter="-0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element origDate
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attribute.instant,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.precision,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atMost,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.min,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.max,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.confidence,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute evidence
   {
      list
      {
        (
           "lettering"
         | "nomenclature"
         | "prosopography"
         | "reign"
         | "titulature"
         | "internal-date"
         | "context"
        ),
        (
           "lettering"
         | "nomenclature"
         | "prosopography"
         | "reign"
         | "titulature"
         | "internal-date"
         | "context"
        )?,
        (
```

```
                    "lettering"
                 | "nomenclature"
                 | "prosopography"
                 | "reign"
                 | "titulature"
                 | "internal-date"
                 | "context"
               )?,
               (
                    "lettering"
                 | "nomenclature"
                 | "prosopography"
                 | "reign"
                 | "titulature"
                 | "internal-date"
                 | "context"
               )?,
               (
                    "lettering"
                 | "nomenclature"
                 | "prosopography"
                 | "reign"
                 | "titulature"
                 | "internal-date"
                 | "context"
               )?,
               (
                    "lettering"
                 | "nomenclature"
                 | "prosopography"
                 | "reign"
                 | "titulature"
                 | "internal-date"
                 | "context"
               )?
          }
     }?,
     ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
}
```

<origPlace> (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1. Origination]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The *type* attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of 'origin', for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.

Example

```
<origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element origPlace
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.8. History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
          <origin notBefore="1802" notAfter="1845"
 evidence="internal" resp="#AMH">Copied in
<name type="origPlace">Derby</name>, probably from an
   old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to
<persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>.
 </origin>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element origin
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<p\> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. Paragraphs 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.fragmentable (*@part*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote said sp stage

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

figures: cell figure

header: abstract application availability cRefPattern calendar change correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote hyphenation interpretation langUsage licence normalization prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl scriptNote segmentation seriesStmt sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msFrag msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc signatures source summary support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc

namesdates: event listRelation nym org person personGrp place state

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: back body div epigraph front

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
    done?</q></p>
<p>
 <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
Thjostolf.</p>
<p>
 <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.</p>
<p>
 <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
me.</q></p>
```

Schematron <s:report test="(ancestor::tei:p or ancestor::tei:ab) and not(parent::tei:exemplum | parent::tei:item |parent::tei:note |parent::tei:q |parent::tei:quote |parent::tei:remarks | parent::tei:said |parent::tei:sp |parent::tei:stage |parent::tei:cell |parent::tei:figure)"> Abstract model violation: Paragraphs may not contain other paragraphs or ab elements. </s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="ancestor::tei:l[not(.//tei:note//tei:p[. = current()])]"> Abstract model violation: Lines may not contain higher-level structural elements such as div, p, or ab. </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element p
{
```

```
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.fragmentable.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<particDesc> (participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in any kind of text or other persons named or otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listOrg listPerson org person personGrp

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

Example

```
<particDesc>
 <listPerson>
  <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="mid">
   <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in
        Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation. Speaks French
fluently.
        Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
  </person>
  <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1">
   <persName>
    <surname>Hancock</surname>
    <forename>Antony</forename>
    <forename>Aloysius</forename>
    <forename>St John</forename>
   </persName>
   <residence notAfter="1959">
    <address>
     <street>Railway Cuttings</street>
     <settlement>East Cheam</settlement>
    </address>
   </residence>
   <occupation>comedian</occupation>
  </person>
  <listRelation>
   <relation type="personal" name="spouse"
    mutual="#P-1234 #P-4332"/>
  </listRelation>
```

```
  </listPerson>
 </particDesc>
```

This example shows both a very simple person description, and a very detailed one, using some of the more specialized elements from the module for Names and Dates.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPerson"/>
   <elementRef key="listOrg"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element particDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.personLike | tei_listPerson | tei_listOrg )+
   )
}
```

\<pb\> (page break) marks the start of a new page in a paginated document. [3.10.3. Milestone Elements]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.edition (@*ed*, @*edRef*) att.spanning (@*spanTo*) att.breaking (@*break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list listBibl measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc subst supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Note   A \<pb\> element should appear at the start of the page which it identifies. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with this page. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the \<pb\> element itself.

The *type* attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect. The more specialized attributes *break*, *ed*, or *edRef* should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the page break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the *facs* attribute

```
<body>
 <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
<!-- page1.png contains an image of the page;
the text it contains is encoded here -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
 <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
<!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
 <p>
<!-- ... -->
 </p>
</body>
```

Content model

Schema Declaration

```
element pb
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.edition.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.breaking.attributes,
   empty
}
```

\<pc\> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

    @force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.enumerated

        Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

            weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

            inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

    @unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.enumerated

    @pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.truthValue

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c

core: abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear

gaiji: g

transcr: am damage ex handShift mod redo retrace secl subst supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<phr>
 <w>do</w>
 <w>you</w>
 <w>understand</w>
 <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
   attribute unit { text }?,
   attribute pre { text }?,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_c | tei_model.pPart.edit )*
}
```

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.personal (@*full*, @*sort*) (att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp respStmt rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

   character data

Example

```
<persName>
 <forename>Edward</forename>
 <forename>George</forename>
 <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of
  <placeName>Knebworth</placeName></roleName></persName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element persName
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<person\> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. The Person Element 15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

@role specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

    Status Optional

    Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

    Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as artist, employer, author, relative, or servant, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a \<valList\> element in the project schema specification.

@sex specifies the sex of the person.

    Status Optional

    Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

    Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property `http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats` (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* `http://standards.iso.org/ittf/PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip` (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* `http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection`.

@age specifies an age group for the person.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary
keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should
be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be
provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

corpus: particDesc

namesdates: listPerson org

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note p pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: birth death event floruit listEvent persName state

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more
specific demographic elements drawn from the **model.personPart** class.

Example

```
<person sex="F" age="adult">
 <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950,
of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic
     status B2.</p>
</person>
```

Example

```
<person sex="intersex" role="god"
 age="immortal">
 <persName>Hermaphroditos</persName>
 <persName xml:lang="grc">Ἑρμαφρόδιτος</persName>
</person>
```

Example

```
<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">
 <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
 <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
 <birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>
   <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
   <country key="IT">Italy</country>
  </placeName></birth>
 <death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
   <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
   <country key="RO">Romania</country>
  </placeName></death>
</person>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
   <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
 </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element person
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { list { + } }?,
   attribute sex { list { + } }?,
   attribute age { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_model.personPart | tei_model.global )* )
}
```

<personGrp> (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [15.2.2. The Participant Description]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

@role specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as movement, employers, relatives, or servants, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

@sex specifies the sex of the participant group.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.sex separated by whitespace

Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property `http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats` (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* `http://standards.iso.org/ittf/ PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_ 2004(E_F).zip` (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered

inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* `http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection`. For a mixed group, a value such as "mixed" may also be supplied.

@age specifies the age group of the participants.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Note Values for this attribute may be locally defined by a project, using arbitrary keywords such as infant, child, teen, adult, or senior, each of which should be associated with a definition. Such local definitions will typically be provided by a `<valList>` element in the project schema specification.

@size describes informally the size or approximate size of the group for example by means of a number and an indication of accuracy e.g. approx 200.

   Status Optional

   Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

corpus: particDesc

namesdates: listPerson org

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: bibl biblStruct cb gap gb index lb listBibl milestone note p pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: birth death event floruit listEvent persName state

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination.

   The global *xml:id* attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the *who* attribute is specified on individual utterances.

Example

```
<personGrp xml:id="pg1" role="audience"
 sex="mixed" size="approx 50"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.personPart"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element personGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   attribute role { text }?,
   attribute sex { list { + } }?,
   attribute age { text }?,
   attribute size { list { + } }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_model.personPart | tei_model.global )* )
}
```

\<phr\> (phrase) represents a grammatical phrase. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.segLike (@*function*) (att.metrical (@*met*, @*real*, @*rhyme*)) (att.datcat (@*datcat*, @*valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (@*part*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of phrase, taking values such as noun, verb, preposition, etc. as appropriate.

Example

```
<phr type="verb"
 function="extraposted_modifier">To talk
 <phr type="preposition"
  function="complement">of
  <phr type="noun" function="object">many things</phr></phr></phr>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element phr
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<physDesc\> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [10.7. Physical Description]

Module   msdescription

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msFrag msPart

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

Example

```
<physDesc>
 <objectDesc form="codex">
  <supportDesc material="perg">
   <support>Parchment.</support>
   <extent>i + 55 leaves
    <dimensions scope="all" type="leaf"
     unit="inch">
      <height>7¼</height>
      <width>5⅜</width>
     </dimensions></extent>
  </supportDesc>
  <layoutDesc>
   <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
  </layoutDesc>
 </objectDesc>
 <handDesc>
  <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
 </handDesc>
 <decoDesc>
  <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
 </decoDesc>
</physDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.physDescPart"
   expand="sequenceOptional"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element physDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike*,
      tei_objectDesc?,
      tei_handDesc?,
      tei_typeDesc?,
      tei_scriptDesc?,
      tei_musicNotation?,
      tei_decoDesc?,
      tei_additions?,
      tei_bindingDesc?,
      tei_sealDesc?,
      tei_accMat?
   )
}
```

<place> contains data about a geographic location [13.3.4. Places]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.placeLike

Contained by

corpus: settingDesc

namesdates: listPlace org place

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab link linkGrp

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: bloc country district event geogName listEvent listPlace location place placeName region settlement state

textcrit: witDetail

Example

```
<place>
 <country>Lithuania</country>
 <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>
 <place>
  <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>
 </place>
 <place>
  <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>
 </place>
</place>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.headLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.pLike"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.placeStateLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.eventLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <elementRef key="idno"/>
   <elementRef key="linkGrp"/>
   <elementRef key="link"/>
  </alternate>
```

```
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
   <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element place
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.headLike*,
      (
        tei_model.pLike*
       | (
            tei_model.labelLike         | tei_model.placeStateLike         | tei_model.
      ),
      (
        tei_model.noteLike      | tei_model.biblLike      | tei_idno      | tei_linkG
      ( tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace )*
   )
}
```

<placeName> contains an absolute or relative place name. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

405

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol
signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName
settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
<placeName>
 <settlement>Rochester</settlement>
 <region>New York</region>
</placeName>
```

Example

```
<placeName>
 <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName>
 <region>Argylshire</region>
</placeName>
```

Example

```
<placeName>
 <measure>10 miles</measure>
 <offset>Northeast of</offset>
```

```
    <settlement>Attica</settlement>
</placeName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element placeName
{
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<postBox> (postal box or post office box) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Note The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

Example

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

Example

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

Content model | `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration | `element postBox { tei_att.global.attributes, text }`

<postCode> (postal code) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain Character data only

Note   The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions
        appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

Example

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

Example

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Schema Declaration `element postCode { tei_att.global.attributes, text }`

\<precision\> indicates the numerical accuracy or precision associated with some aspect of the text markup. [21.2. Indications of Precision]

Module certainty

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
        (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
        @prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
        (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.scoping
        (*@target*, *@match*) att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*) att.datable
        (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))
        (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom
        (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*,
        @datingMethod))

@precision characterizes the precision of the element or attribute pointed to by the
        \<precision\> element.
        Status Optional
        Datatype teidata.certainty

@stdDeviation supplies a standard deviation associated with the value in question
        Status Optional
        Datatype teidata.numeric

Member of model.certLike model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: interp m phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor
        email emph expan foreign gap gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list
        measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said
        series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab join seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc space substJoin supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Example

```
<date xml:id="date001" notBefore="0014"
 notAfter="0064">Within about 50
   years of the death of Augustus</date>
<precision target="#date001"
 match="@notBefore" precision="high"/>
<precision target="#date001"
 match="@notAfter" precision="low"/>
```

Example

```
<date notBefore="1632" notAfter="1642">Not more than ten years before the
start of the Civil War
 <precision match="@notBefore"
  precision="low"/>
 <precision match="@notAfter"
  precision="high"/></date>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element precision
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.scoping.attributes,
   tei_att.ranging.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   attribute precision { text }?,
   attribute stdDeviation { text }?,
```

```
      ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

\<prefixDef\> (prefix definition) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3. Using Abbreviated Pointers]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.patternReplacement (*@matchPattern*, *@replacementPattern*)

@ident supplies a name which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.prefix

Contained by: header: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note The abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of *xml:base* in force at the place where the pointing attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

Note So that the value of this attribute may be mapped directly to a URI prefix, the value is limited to teidata.prefix.

Example

```
<prefixDef ident="ref"
 matchPattern="([a-z]+)"
 replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
 <p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
     the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in
     the project's global references.xml file.
   </p>
</prefixDef>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element prefixDef
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
      tei_att.patternReplacement.attributes,
      attribute ident { text },
      tei_model.pLike*
}
```

<principal> (principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin character data

Example

```
<principal ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/105517912">Gary Taylor</principal>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element principal
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

411

```
      tei_att.canonical.attributes,
      tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4. The Profile Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: biblFull teiHeader

May contain

corpus: particDesc settingDesc

header: abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation langUsage textClass

transcr: handNotes listTranspose

Note   Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of <profileDesc> unless these are documenting multiple texts.

In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the <creation> element appear first.

Example

```
<profileDesc>
 <langUsage>
  <language ident="fr">French</language>
 </langUsage>
 <textDesc n="novel">
  <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="art"/>
  <factuality type="fiction"/>
  <interaction type="none"/>
  <preparedness type="prepared"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
 </textDesc>
 <settingDesc>
  <setting>
   <name>Paris, France</name>
   <time>Late 19th century</time>
  </setting>
 </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.profileDescPart"
  minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element profileDesc { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_model.profileDescPart* }
```

<projectDesc> (project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected. [2.3.1. The Project Description 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<projectDesc>
 <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, June
1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element projectDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8. History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.</provenance>
<provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element provenance
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<ptr> (pointer) defines a pointer to another location. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*) att.internetMedia (@*mimeType*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.cReferencing (@*cRef*)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc notatedMusic

header: application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab linkGrp seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus transpose

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<ptr target="#p143 #p144"/>
<ptr target="http://www.tei-c.org"/>
<ptr cRef="1.3.4"/>
```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target and @cRef may be supplied on <s:name/>.</s:report>

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element ptr
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.internetMedia.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
```

```
    tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
    empty
}
```

\<pubPlace\> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.detail

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
            character data

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc. 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher

header: authority availability distributor idno

linking: ab

Note Where a publication statement contains several members of the model.publicationStmtPart.agency or model.publicationStmtPart.detail classes rather than one or more paragraphs or anonymous blocks, care should be taken to ensure that the repeated elements are presented in a meaningful order. It is a conformance requirement that elements supplying information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned, and preferably in that order.

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
 <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
 <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
 <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
 <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
 <availability>
  <p>Available under licence only</p>
 </availability>
 <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
```

```
    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.agency"/>
    <classRef key="model.publicationStmtPart.detail"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.agency,
         tei_model.publicationStmtPart.detail*
      )+
    | tei_model.pLike+
   )
}
```

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution
of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information
2.2.4. Publication, Distribution, Licensing, etc.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart.agency

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

Example

```
<imprint>
 <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
 <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
 <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element publisher { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

\<punctuation\> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to punctuation marks in the original. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 3.2. Treatment of Punctuation]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.declarable (@*default*) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

@marks indicates whether or not punctation marks have been retained as content within the text.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Legal values are: **none** no punctuation marks have been retained

      some some punctuation marks have been retained

      all all punctuation marks have been retained

@placement indicates whether punctuation marks have been captured inside or outside of an adjacent element.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Legal values are: **internal** punctuation marks are captured inside adjacent elements

      external punctuation marks are captured outside adjacent elements

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<punctuation marks="all"
 placement="internal">
 <p>All punctuation marks in the source text have been retained and
represented using the
     appropriate Unicode code point. In cases where a punctuation mark and
nearby markup convey
     the same information (for example, a sentence ends with a question
mark and is also tagged
     as <gi>s</gi>) the punctuation mark is captured as content within the
element.
   </p>
</punctuation>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element punctuation
{
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
   attribute placement { "internal" | "external" }?,
   tei_model.pLike*
}
```

\<q\> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.ascribed (*@who*)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue

written quotation from a written source

>>   **soCalled** authorial distance
>>   **foreign**
>>   **distinct** linguistically distinct
>>   **term** technical term
>>   **emph** rhetorically emphasized
>>   **mentioned** refering to itself, not its normal referent

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of *rend* that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

Example

```
    It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> — to enter the
    letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press
    <q>0 0 f c</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element q
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      "spoken"
    | "thought"
    | "written"
    | "soCalled"
    | "foreign"
    | "distinct"
    | "term"
    | "emph"
    | "mentioned"
   }?,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<quotation> specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original.
[2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

@marks (quotation marks) indicates whether or not quotation marks have been retained as content within the text.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Legal values are: **none** no quotation marks have been retained

        some some quotation marks have been retained

        all all quotation marks have been retained

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<quotation marks="none">
 <p>No quotation marks have been retained. Instead, the <att>rend</att> attribute on the
   <gi>q</gi> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according
      to the following list: <list type="gloss">
    <label>dq</label>
    <item>double quotes, open and close</item>
    <label>sq</label>
    <item>single quotes, open and close</item>
    <label>dash</label>
    <item>long dash open, no close</item>
    <label>dg</label>
    <item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
   </list></p>
</quotation>
```

Example

```
<quotation marks="all">
 <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by appropriate Unicode
      characters.</p>
</quotation>
```

Schematron   <s:report test="not(@marks) and not (tei:p)">On <s:name/>, either the @marks attribute should be used, or a paragraph of description provided</s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element quotation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
   tei_model.pLike*
}
```

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. Quotation 4.3.1. Grouped Texts]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.msExcerpt (@*defective*)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
    keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element quote
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.msExcerpt.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<rdg> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.textCritical (@*type*, @*cause*, @*varSeq*, @*require*) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.witnessed (@*wit*) att.global (@xml:id, @*n*, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)

@ana *Status* Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.fragId separated by whitespace

  Suggested values include: **#lexical**

  #syntactic

  #morphological

  #ordinal

  #orthographical

  #subtractive

  #additive

Member of model.rdgLike

Contained by

textcrit: app rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart

textstructure: div floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.divLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.rdgPart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rdg
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.textCritical.attributes,
   tei_att.witnessed.attributes,
   attribute ana
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "#lexical"
          | "#syntactic"
          | "#morphological"
          | "#ordinal"
          | "#orthographical"
```

```
         | "#subtractive"
         | "#additive"
       )+
     }
  }?,
  (
     text
   | tei_model.divLike   | tei_model.divPart   | tei_model.gLike   | tei_model.phrase
}
```

<rdgGrp> (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.textCritical (@*type*, @*cause*, @*varSeq*, @*require*) (att.written (@*hand*)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (@cert, @resp) att.global.source (@source)
@ana *Status* Optional

> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.fragId separated by whitespace
>
> *Suggested values include:* **#lexical**
>
> > **#syntactic**
> >
> > **#morphological**
> >
> > **#ordinal**
> >
> > **#orthographical**
> >
> > **#subtractive**
> >
> > **#additive**

Contained by textcrit: app rdgGrp

May contain

core: note

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

Note May contain readings and nested reading groups.

Note that only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Ra2">though</lem>
 <rdgGrp type="orthographic">
  <rdg wit="#Hg">thogh</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#La">thouhe</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
</app>
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="count(tei:lem) < 2">Only one <lem> element may appear within a <rdgGrp></sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
```

```
      maxOccurs="unbounded">
      <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
       <elementRef key="rdgGrp"/>
       <elementRef key="wit" minOccurs="0"/>
      </sequence>
      <sequence minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
        <elementRef key="lem"/>
        <elementRef key="wit" minOccurs="0"/>
       </sequence>
       <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
        <classRef key="model.rdgLike"/>
        <elementRef key="wit" minOccurs="0"/>
       </sequence>
      </sequence>
      <classRef key="model.noteLike"
       minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
     </alternate>
   </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rdgGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.resp,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.textCritical.attributes,
   attribute ana
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "#lexical"
          | "#syntactic"
          | "#morphological"
          | "#ordinal"
          | "#orthographical"
          | "#subtractive"
          | "#additive"
         )+
      }
   }?,
```

```
     (
       ( tei_rdgGrp, tei_wit? )
     | ( ( tei_lem, tei_wit? )?, ( tei_model.rdgLike, tei_wit? ) )*
     | tei_model.noteLike*
     )+
}
```

<recordHist> (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself. [10.9.1. Administrative Information]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

header: change

linking: ab

msdescription: source

Example

```
<recordHist>
 <source>
  <p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with additional
research
       by P.M.W.Robinson</p>
 </source>
 <change when="1999-06-23">
  <name>LDB</name> (editor)
     checked examples against DTD version 3.6
 </change>
</recordHist>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="source"/>
   <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element recordHist
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
```

```
    ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_source, tei_change* ) )
}
```

<redo> indicates one or more cancelled interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked as reaffirmed or repeated. [11.3.4.4. Confirmation, Cancellation, and Reinstatement of Modifications]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))) (att.written (*@hand*))

    @target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are being reasserted.
       Status Optional
       Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<line>
 <redo hand="#g_t" target="#redo-1"
  cause="fix"/>
 <mod xml:id="redo-1" rend="strikethrough"
  spanTo="#anchor-1" hand="#g_bl"/>Ihr hagren, triften,
krummgezog<mod rend="strikethrough">nen</mod>ener Nacken</line>
<line>Wenn ihr nur piepfet ift die Welt fchon
matt.<anchor xml:id="anchor-1"/></line>
```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "Ihr hagren, tristen, krummgezog nenener Nacken/ Wenn ihr nur piepset ist die Welt schon matt." is written

- the redundant letters "nen" in "nenener" are deleted

- the whole passage is deleted by hand `g_bl` using strikethrough

- the deletion is reasserted by another hand (identified here as `g_t`)

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element redo
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   empty
}
```

<ref> (reference) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. Simple Links and Cross-References 16.1. Links]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*) att.internetMedia (@*mimeType*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.cReferencing (@*cRef*)

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg relatedItem resp rs said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc notatedMusic

header: application authority catDesc change classCode correspContext creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

spoken: transcriptionDesc

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The *target* and *cRef* attributes are mutually exclusive.

Example

```
See especially <ref target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/
A02.xml#s2">the second
    sentence</ref>
```

Example

```
See also <ref target="#locution">s.v. <term>locution</term></ref>.
```

Schematron   <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element ref
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.internetMedia.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<refState> (reference state) specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.milestoneUnit (*@unit*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*)

@length specifies the fixed length of the reference component.

  Status Optional

  Datatype teidata.count

  Note When constructing a reference, if the reference component found is of numeric type, the length is made up by inserting leading zeros; if it is not, by inserting trailing blanks. In either case, reference components are truncated if necessary at the right hand side.

  When seeking a reference, the length indicates the number of characters which should be compared. Values longer than this will be regarded as matching, if they start correctly. If no value is provided, the length is unlimited and goes to the next delimiter or to the end of the value.

@delim (delimiter) supplies a delimiting string following the reference component.

  Status Optional

  Datatype teidata.text

Contained by: header: refsDecl

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<refState unit="book" delim=":"/>
<refState unit="line" length="4"/>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element refState
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.milestoneUnit.attributes,
   tei_att.edition.attributes,
   attribute length { text }?,
   attribute delim { text }?,
   empty
}
```

<refsDecl> (references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text. [2.3.6.3. Milestone Method 2.3. The Encoding Description 2.3.6. The Reference System Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable
(*@default*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: cRefPattern refState

linking: ab

Example

```
<refsDecl>
 <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)"
  replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$1']/div[$2]/div3[$3])"/>
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in
the following example.

Example

```
<refsDecl>
 <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
  <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
     element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
     number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
     followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
     level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="cRefPattern"
   minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="refState" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | tei_cRefPattern+ | tei_refState+ )
}
```

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.
[3.4.2. Regularization and Normalization 12. Critical Apparatus]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is
<reg>required</reg></q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
 </choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
 </choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
 </choice></q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element reg
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<region> contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol
signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName
settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Example

```
<placeName>
 <region type="state" n="IL">Illinois</region>
</placeName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element region
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
```

```
      tei_att.datable.attributes,
      tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<relatedItem> contains or references some other bibliographic item which is related to the
present one in some specified manner, for example as a constituent or alternative version of it.
[3.11.2.7. Related Items]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

@target points to the related bibliographic element by means of an absolute or relative
URI reference
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

header: notesStmt

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct listBibl ptr ref

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

Note If the *target* attribute is used to reference the related bibliographic item, the element should be
empty.

Example

```
<biblStruct>
 <monogr>
  <author>Shirley, James</author>
  <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
  <imprint>
   <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>
   <publisher>Readex Microprint</publisher>
   <date>1953</date>
  </imprint>
  <extent>1 microprint card, 23 x 15 cm.</extent>
 </monogr>
 <series>
  <title>Three centuries of drama: English, 1642-1700</title>
 </series>
 <relatedItem type="otherForm">
  <biblStruct>
   <monogr>
    <author>Shirley, James</author>
    <title type="main">The gentlemen of Venice</title>
    <title type="sub">a tragi-comedie presented at the private house in
Salisbury
            Court by Her Majesties servants</title>
    <imprint>
     <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
```

```
      <publisher>H. Moseley</publisher>
      <date>1655</date>
     </imprint>
     <extent>78 p.</extent>
    </monogr>
   </biblStruct>
  </relatedItem>
</biblStruct>
```

Schematron <sch:report test="@target and count(child::*) > 0">If the @target attribute on <sch:name/> is used, the relatedItem element must be empty</sch:report> <sch:assert test="@target or child::*">A relatedItem element should have either a 'target' attribute or a child element to indicate the related bibliographic item</sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element relatedItem
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute target { text }?,
   ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.ptrLike )?
}
```

<relation> (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of places, events, persons, objects or other items. [13.3.2.3. Personal Relationships]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@name supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.

　　　　Status Optional

　　　　Datatype teidata.enumerated

@passive identifies the 'passive' participants in a non-mutual relationship.

　　　　Status Optional

　　　　Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@active identifies the 'active' participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the
participants in a mutual one.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@mutual supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds
equally.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Contained by listBibl

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation

May contain

core: desc

Note   Only one of the attributes *active* and *mutual* may be supplied; the attribute *passive* may be
supplied only if the attribute *active* is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in
all schema languages.

Example

```
<relation type="social" name="supervisor"
 active="#p1" passive="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4.

Example

```
<relation type="personal" name="friends"
 mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends.

Example

```
<relation type="CRM"
 name="P89_falls_within"
 active="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/place/italy-orvieto"
 passive="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/metamorphoses/country/IT"/>
```

This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources
identified by URLs.

Example

```
<relation resp="http://viaf.org/viaf/44335536/"
 ref="http://purl.org/saws/ontology#isVariantOf"
 active="http://www.ancientwisdoms.ac.uk/cts/
urn:cts:greekLit:tlg3017.Syno298.sawsGrc01:divedition.divsection1.o14.a107"
 passive="http://data.perseus.org/citations/
urn:cts:greekLit:tlg0031.tlg002.perseus-grc1:9.35"/>
```

This example records a relationship, defined by the SAWS ontology, between a passage of text
identified by a CTS URN, and a variant passage of text in the Perseus Digital Library, and
assigns the identification of the relationship to a particular editor (all using resolvable URIs).

Schematron <s:assert test="@ref or @key or @name">One of the attributes 'name', 'ref' or 'key'
must be supplied</s:assert>

Schematron <s:report test="@active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and
@mutual may be supplied</s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="desc" minOccurs="0"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element relation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute name { text }?,
   attribute passive { list { + } }?,
   ( attribute active { list { + } }? | attribute mutual { list { + } }? ),
   tei_desc?
}
```

<rendition> supplies information about the rendition or appearance of one or more elements in the source text. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.styleDef (@*scheme*, @*schemeVersion*)

@scope where CSS is used, provides a way of defining 'pseudo-elements', that is, styling rules applicable to specific sub-portions of an element.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Sample values include: **first-line** styling applies to the first line of the target element

      first-letter styling applies to the first letter of the target element

      before styling should be applied immediately before the content of the target element

      after styling should be applied immediately after the content of the target element

@selector contains a selector or series of selectors specifying the elements to which the contained style description applies, expressed in the language specified in the *scheme* attribute.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.text

```
<rendition scheme="css"
 selector="text, front, back, body, div, p, ab">
   display: block;
 </rendition>
```

441

```
<rendition scheme="css"
 selector="*[rend*=italic]"> font-style: italic;
 </rendition>
```

Note Since the default value of the *scheme* attribute is assumed
    to be CSS, the default expectation for this attribute, in
    the absence of *scheme*, is that CSS selector syntax will be
    used.

Note While *rendition* is used to point from an element in the
    transcribed source to a <rendition> element in the header
    which describes how it appears, the *selector* attribute
    allows the encoder to point in the other direction: from a
    <rendition> in the header to a collection of elements which
    all share the same renditional features. In both cases, the
    intention is to record the appearance of the source text,
    not to prescribe any particular output rendering.

Contained by: header: tagsDecl

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

    character data

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
 <rendition xml:id="r-center" scheme="css">text-align: center;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="r-small" scheme="css">font-size: small;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="r-large" scheme="css">font-size: large;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="initcaps"
  scope="first-letter" scheme="css">font-size: xx-large</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rendition
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.styleDef.attributes,
   attribute scope { text }?,
```

```
attribute selector { text }?,
tei_macro.limitedContent}
```

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4. The Manuscript Identifier]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
 <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
 <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
 <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
 <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element repository
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

<resp> (responsibility) contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility, or an organization's role in the production or distribution of a work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Contained by

core: respStmt

443

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin character data

Note The attribute *ref*, inherited from the class **att.canonical** may be used to indicate the kind of responsibility in a normalized form by referring directly to a standardized list of responsibility types, such as that maintained by a naming authority, for example the list maintained at `http://www.loc.gov/marc/relators/relacode.html` for bibliographic usage.

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp ref="http://id.loc.gov/vocabulary/relators/com.html">compiler</resp>
 <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element resp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<respStmt> (statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply. May also be used to encode information about individuals or organizations which have played a role in the production or distribution of a bibliographic work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.2. The Edition Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: analytic bibl imprint monogr series

header: editionStmt seriesStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

core: name resp

namesdates: orgName persName

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
 <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

Example

```
<respStmt>
 <resp>converted to XML encoding</resp>
 <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.nameLike.agent"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="resp" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element respStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   (
      ( tei_resp+, tei_model.nameLike.agent+ )
    | ( tei_model.nameLike.agent+, tei_resp+ )
   )
}
```

<retrace> contains a sequence of writing which has been retraced, for example by over-inking, to clarify or fix it. [11.3.4.3. Fixation and Clarification]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.transcriptional (*@status*, *@cause*, *@seq*) (att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))) (att.written (*@hand*))

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note Multiple retraces are indicated by nesting one <retrace> within another. In principle, a retrace differs from a substitution in that second and subsequent rewrites do not materially alter the content of an element. Where minor changes have been made during the retracing action however these may be marked up using <del>, <add>, etc. with an appropriate value for the *change* attribute.

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element retrace
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.6. The Revision Description 2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.docStatus (@*status*)

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change listChange

Note If present on this element, the *status* attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally <change> elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
 <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
  <elementRef key="list"/>
  <elementRef key="listChange"/>
  <elementRef key="change" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.docStatus.attributes,
   ( tei_list | tei_listChange | tei_change+ )
}
```

\<roleName\> contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
character data

Note A \<roleName\> may be distinguished from an \<addName\> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

Example

```
<persName>
 <forename>William</forename>
 <surname>Poulteny</surname>
 <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element roleName
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<row\> contains one row of a table. [«#FTTAB1»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.tableDecoration (*@role*, *@rows*, *@cols*)

Contained by

figures: table

May contain

figures: cell

Example

```
<row role="data">
 <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
 <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <elementRef key="cell" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element row
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.tableDecoration.attributes,
   tei_cell+
}
```

<rs> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. Personal Names 3.5.1. Referring Strings]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
    last?</q>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rs
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<rubric\> contains the text of any *rubric* or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is,
a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often
with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself,
usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device.
[10.6.1. The msItem and msItemStruct Elements]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<ex>ur</ex>.</rubric>
<rubric>Incipit liber de consciencia humana a beatissimo Bernardo
editus.</rubric>
<rubric>
 <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta Cassiodori</rubric>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element rubric
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<s> (s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text. [17.1. Linguistic Segment Categories 8.4.1. Segmentation]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike (*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*)) (att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For segmentation which is partial or recursive, the <seg> should be used instead.

The *type* attribute may be used to indicate the type of segmentation intended, according to any convenient typology.

Example

```
<head>
 <s>A short affair</s>
</head>
<s>When are you leaving?</s>
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

Schematron <s:report test="tei:s">You may not nest one s element within another: use seg instead</s:report>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element s
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<said> (speech or thought) indicates passages thought or spoken aloud, whether explicitly indicated in the source or not, whether directly or indirectly reported, whether by real people or fictional characters. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.ascribed (*@who*)

@aloud may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as having been vocalized or signed.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.xTruthValue
>
> *Default* unknown
>
> Deprecated   The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05

```
<p> Celia thought privately, <said aloud="false">Dorothea
quite despises Sir James Chettam;
     I believe she would not accept him.</said> Celia felt
that this was a pity.

<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

> *Note* The value true indicates the encoded passage was expressed outwardly (whether spoken, signed, sung, screamed, chanted, etc.); the value false indicates that the encoded passage was thought, but not outwardly expressed.

@direct may be used to indicate whether the quoted matter is regarded as direct or
    indirect speech.
    Status Optional
    Datatype teidata.xTruthValue
    Default true

```
<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>
 <quotation marks="none"/>
</editorialDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<p> Tantripp had brought a card, and said that there was a
gentleman waiting in the lobby.
    The courier had told him that <said direct="false">only
Mrs. Casaubon was at home</said>,
    but he said <said direct="false">he was a relation of Mr.
Casaubon's: would she see him?</said></p>
```

    Note The value true indicates the speech or thought is
        represented directly; the value false that speech or thought
        is represented indirectly, e.g. by use of a marked verbal
        aspect.

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: add cit corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
    secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

    character data

Example

```
<!-- in the header --><editorialDecl>
 <quotation marks="all"/>
</editorialDecl>
<!-- ... -->
<p>
 <said>"Our minstrel here will warm the old man's heart with song, dazzle
him with jewels and
     gold"</said>, a troublemaker simpered. <said>"He'll trample on the
Duke's camellias, spill
     his wine, and blunt his sword, and say his name begins with X, and in
the end the Duke
     will say, <said>'Take Saralinda, with my blessing, O lordly Prince of
Rags and Tags, O
         rider of the sun!'</said>"</said></p>
```

Example

```
<p>
 <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Hmmm</said>, said a small voice
in his ear.
 <said aloud="true" rend="pre(") post(")">Difficult. Very difficult. Plenty
of courage, I see.
     Not a bad mind either. there's talent, oh my goodness, yes — and a
nice thirst to prove
     yourself, now that's interesting. … So where shall I put you?
</said></p>
<p>Harry gripped the edges of the stool and thought,
<said aloud="false" rend="italic">Not
     Slytherin, not Slytherin</said>.</p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element said
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
    attribute aloud { text }?,
    attribute direct { text }?,
    tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<samplingDecl\> (sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection. [2.3.2. The Sampling Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Note This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

Example

```
<samplingDecl>
 <p>Samples of up to 2000 words taken at random from the beginning, middle,
or end of each
     text identified as relevant by respondents.</p>
</samplingDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element samplingDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<schemaRef> (schema reference) describes or points to a related customization or schema file [2.3.9. The Schema Specification]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.resourced (*@url*)

@key the identifier used for the customization or schema

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.xmlName

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc

Example

```
<schemaRef type="interchangeODD"
 url="http://www.tei-c.org/release/xml/tei/custom/odd/tei_lite.odd"/>
<schemaRef type="interchangeRNG"
 url="http://www.tei-c.org/release/xml/tei/custom/odd/tei_lite.rng"/>
<schemaRef type="projectODD"
 url="file:///schema/project.odd"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.descLike"
  minOccurs="0"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element schemaRef
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.resourced.attributes,
   attribute key { text }?,
   tei_model.descLike?
}
```

<scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or similar source.
[10.7.2.1. Writing]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: scriptNote

linking: ab

msdescription: summary

Example

```
<scriptDesc>
 <p/>
</scriptDesc>
```

Example

```
    <scriptDesc>
     <summary>Contains two distinct styles of scripts </summary>
     <scriptNote xml:id="style-1">.</scriptNote>
     <scriptNote xml:id="style-2">.</scriptNote>
    </scriptDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="scriptNote"
    minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element scriptDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_summary?, tei_scriptNote+ ) )
}
```

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript
  or similar resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
   (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
   @prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
   (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.handFeatures
   (*@scribe*, *@scribeRef*, *@script*, *@scriptRef*, *@medium*, *@scope*)

Contained by

msdescription: scriptDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email
   emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure
   measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said
   sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
   objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<scriptNote scope="sole"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element scriptNote
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.handFeatures.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

\<seal\> contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript. [10.7.3.2. Seals]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.datable (@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*)) (att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*, @*datingMethod*))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to which it is affixed

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.xTruthValue

Contained by msdescription: sealDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: decoNote

Example

```
     <seal n="2" type="pendant"
      subtype="cauda_duplex">
     <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax.
         (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>.
         Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p>
     </seal>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
  <elementRef key="decoNote"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seal
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   attribute contemporary { text }?,
   ( tei_model.pLike | tei_decoNote )+
}
```

<sealDesc> (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <seal> elements, possibly with additional <decoNote>s. [10.7.3.2. Seals]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

msdescription: condition decoNote seal summary

Example

```
<sealDesc>
 <seal type="pendant" contemporary="true">
  <p>Green wax vertical oval seal attached at base.</p>
 </seal>
</sealDesc>
```

Example

461

```
<sealDesc>
 <p>Parchment strip for seal in place; seal missing.</p>
</sealDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <elementRef key="decoNote"/>
   <elementRef key="seal"/>
   <elementRef key="condition"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sealDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
   | ( tei_summary?, ( tei_decoNote | tei_seal | tei_condition )+ )
   )
}
```

\<secFol\> (second folio) marks the word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<secFol>(con-)versio morum</secFol>
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc" role="nonfatal">WARNING: deprecated use of element — The <sch:name/> element will not be allowed outside of msDesc as of 2018-10-01.</sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element secFol { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<secl> (secluded text) Secluded. Marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be genuine but out of its original place (which is unknown). [11.3.1.7. Text Omitted from or Supplied in the Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))

@reason one or more words indicating why this text has been secluded, e.g. *interpolated* etc.

   Status Optional

   Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<rdg source="#Pescani">
 <secl>
  <l n="15" xml:id="l15">Alphesiboea suos ulta est pro coniuge fratres,</l>
  <l n="16" xml:id="l16">sanguinis et cari vincula rupit amor.</l>
 </secl>
</rdg>
<wit>secl. Pescani</wit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element secl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<seg> (arbitrary segment) represents any segmentation of text below the 'chunk' level. [16.3. Blocks,
Segments, and Anchors 6.2. Components of the Verse Line 7.2.5. Speech Contents]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike
(*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))
(att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.choicePart model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor
email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned
name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage
street term textLang time title

figures: cell notatedMusic

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The <seg> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element—i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a <ptr> or other similar element.

Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

Example

```
<s>
 <seg rend="caps" type="initial-cap">So father's only</seg> glory was the
ballfield. </s>
```

Example

```
<seg type="preamble">
 <seg>Sigmund, <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>, was a king in
Frankish country.</seg>
 <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
 <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ... </seg>
</seg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seg
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.segLike.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.written.attributes,
    tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<segmentation> describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<segmentation>
 <p>
  <gi>s</gi> elements mark orthographic sentences and are numbered
sequentially within
     their parent <gi>div</gi> element </p>
</segmentation>
```

Example

```
<p>
 <gi>seg</gi> elements are used to mark functional constituents of various
types within each
 <gi>s</gi>; the typology used is defined by a <gi>taxonomy</gi> element in
the corpus
    header <gi>classDecl</gi></p>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
```

467

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element segmentation
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

\<series\> (series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other
bibliographic item has appeared. [3.11.2.1. Analytic, Monographic, and Series Levels]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: biblScope cb editor gap gb index lb milestone note pb ptr ref respStmt textLang title

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: availability idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

character data

Example

```
<series xml:lang="de">
 <title level="s">Halbgraue Reihe zur Historischen Fachinformatik</title>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>Herausgegeben von</resp>
  <name type="person">Manfred Thaller</name>
  <name type="org">Max-Planck-Institut für Geschichte</name>
 </respStmt>
 <title level="s">Serie A: Historische Quellenkunden</title>
 <biblScope>Band 11</biblScope>
</series>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
```

```
    <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
    <elementRef key="title"/>
    <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
    <elementRef key="editor"/>
    <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
    <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
    <elementRef key="idno"/>
    <elementRef key="textLang"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"/>
    <elementRef key="availability"/>
   </alternate>
  </content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element series
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_title    | tei_model.ptrLike    | tei_editor    | tei_resp
}
```

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. The Series Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: biblScope editor p respStmt title

header: idno

linking: ab

Example

```
<seriesStmt>
 <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>ed. by</resp>
  <name>Jan Gonda</name>
 </respStmt>
 <biblScope unit="volume">1.2</biblScope>
 <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

469

```
      <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
       maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <elementRef key="editor"/>
       <elementRef key="respStmt"/>
      </alternate>
      <alternate minOccurs="0"
       maxOccurs="unbounded">
       <elementRef key="idno"/>
       <elementRef key="biblScope"/>
      </alternate>
    </sequence>
   </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
    | (
         tei_title+,
         ( tei_editor | tei_respStmt )*,
         ( tei_idno | tei_biblScope )*
      )
   )
}
```

<settingDesc> (setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, or other places otherwise referred to in a text, edition, or metadata. [15.2. Contextual Information 2.4. The Profile Description]

Module corpus

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

namesdates: listPlace place

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements. If used to record not settings of language interactions, but other places mentioned in the text, then <place> optionally grouped by <listPlace> should be preferred.

Example

```
<settingDesc>
 <p>Texts recorded in the
     Canadian Parliament building in Ottawa, between April and November
1988 </p>
</settingDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="setting"/>
  <classRef key="model.placeLike"/>
  <elementRef key="listPlace"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element settingDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( setting | tei_model.placeLike | tei_listPlace )+ )
}
```

<settlement> contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit. [13.2.3. Place Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
        funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
        typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon condition
        custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
        msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol
        signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
        geogName location offset org orgName persName place placeName region roleName
        settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
        gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
        num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
        objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
        offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
        secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
        character data

Example

```
<placeName>
 <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>
 <region>Scotland</region>
</placeName>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element settlement
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
```

```
        tei_att.typed.attributes,
        tei_att.datable.attributes,
        tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.
　　　[3.4.1. Apparent Errors]

Module　core

Attributes　Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
　　　(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
　　　@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
　　　(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of　model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis:　pc phr s w

core:　abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor
　　　email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned
　　　name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage
　　　street term textLang time title

figures:　cell

header:　change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking:　ab seg

msdescription:　accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
　　　decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
　　　musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
　　　source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates:　addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
　　　geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit:　lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure:　dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr:　am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis:　c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty:　certainty precision

core:　abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email
　　　emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure
　　　measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said
　　　sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures:　figure notatedMusic table

gaiji:　g

header:　biblFull idno

linking:　anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription:　catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
　　　objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates:　addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent
　　　listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region
　　　roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may
be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
— how <choice>
 <sic>we can</sic>
 <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
 <sic>a Table</sic>
 <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sic { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.paraContent }
```

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex. [10.3.7. Catchwords, Signatures, Secundo Folio]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting

mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman
   numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different
   from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic
   numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for
   quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for
   quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in
   a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>
```

Schematron   <sch:assert test="ancestor::tei:msDesc" role="nonfatal">WARNING: deprecated use of element — The <sch:name/> element will not be allowed outside of msDesc as of 2018-10-01.</sch:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element signatures { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<soCalled> contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics. [3.3.3. Quotation]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
To edge his way along
the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance,
was what the
knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element soCalled { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description. [10.9.1.1. Record History]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

msdescription: recordHist

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref></source>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element source { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

\<sourceDesc\> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7. The Source Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct list listBibl p

figures: table

header: biblFull

linking: ab

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listApp listWit

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
 <bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
```

```
        <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
   </sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
   <sourceDesc>
    <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
   </sourceDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.sourceDescPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
  </alternate>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
    | ( tei_model.biblLike | tei_model.sourceDescPart | tei_model.listLike )+
   )
}
```

\<sourceDoc\> contains a transcription or other representation of a single source document potentially forming part of a *dossier génétique* or collection of sources. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declaring (@*decls*)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic index lb media milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin surface surfaceGrp

Note This element may be used as an alternative to <facsimile> for TEI documents containing only page images, or for documents containing both images and transcriptions. Transcriptions may be provided within the <surface> elements making up a source document, in parallel with them as part of a <text> element, or in both places if the encoder wishes to distinguish these two modes of transcription.

Example

```
<sourceDoc>
 <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
  <surface facs="page1.png">
   <zone>All the writing on page 1</zone>
  </surface>
  <surface>
   <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
   <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
   <zone>
    <line>A line of writing on page 2</line>
    <line>Another line of writing on page 2</line>
   </zone>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sourceDoc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   ( tei_model.global | tei_model.graphicLike | tei_surface | tei_surfaceGrp )+
}
```

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.2. Speeches and Speakers]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.ascribed (*@who*)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote said stage

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg

textstructure: body div epigraph

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb cit gap gb index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote said speaker stage

figures: figure notatedMusic table

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note The *who* attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the \<speaker\> element or as an alternative.

Example

```
<sp>
 <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
 <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
 <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
 <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
first place [...]</p>
 <p>Fish, Miss Gryll — I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
for the present I
     will forbear [...]</p>
</sp>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="speaker"/>
```

```
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <sequence minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="lg"/>
    <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.listLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.stageLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.qLike"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_speaker, tei_model.global* )?,
      (
         (
            tei_lg           | tei_model.lLike          | tei_model.pLike          | tei_m
         tei_model.global*
      )+
   )
}
```

<space> indicates the location of a significant space in the text. [11.5.1. Space]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space) att.global.rendition (@rend, @style, @rendition) att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.global.responsibility (~~resp~~, @cert) att.global.source (@source)

@resp (responsible party) (responsible party) indicates the individual responsible for identifying and measuring the space

  Derived from att.global.responsibility

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@dim (dimension) indicates whether the space is horizontal or vertical.

  Status Recommended

  Datatype teidata.enumerated

  Legal values are: **horizontal** the space is horizontal.

    vertical the space is vertical.

> *Note* For irregular shapes in two dimensions, the value for this attribute should reflect the more important of the two dimensions. In conventional left-right scripts, a space with both vertical and horizontal components should be classed as vertical.

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Note This element should be used wherever it is desired to record an unusual space in the source text, e.g. space left for a word to be filled in later, for later rubrication, etc. It is not intended to be used to mark normal inter-word space or the like.

Example

```
By god if wommen had writen storyes
As <space quantity="7" unit="minims"/> han within her oratoryes
```

Example

```
στρατηλάτ<space quantity="1" unit="chars"/>ου
```

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:space"> <sch:report test="@quantity and @extent">space may have @quantity (a figure) or @extent (a descriptive text value)   but not both</sch:report> <sch:report test="@quantity and not(@unit)">If space has @quantity then @unit is required</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:space"> <sch:report test="@quantity and @extent">space may have @quantity (a figure) or @extent (a descriptive text value) but not both</sch:report> <sch:report test="@quantity and not(@unit)">If space has @quantity then @unit is required</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element space
{
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlid,
   tei_att.global.attribute.n,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmllang,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
   tei_att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rend,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.style,
   tei_att.global.rendition.attribute.rendition,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.next,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
   tei_att.global.linking.attribute.select,
   tei_att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
   tei_att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
   tei_att.global.change.attribute.change,
   tei_att.global.responsibility.attribute.cert,
   tei_att.global.source.attribute.source,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   attribute resp { list { + } }?,
   attribute dim { "horizontal" | "vertical" }?,
   ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

\<speaker\> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
 <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
 <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
 <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
 <item xml:id="ni"/>
 <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element speaker { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

\<sponsor\> specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution. [2.2.1. The Title Statement]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: editionStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr address cb choice date distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss hi index lb measure measureGrp mentioned milestone name note num pb ptr ref rs soCalled term time title

figures: figure notatedMusic

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am delSpan ex fw listTranspose metamark space subst substJoin

   character data

Note   Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from *funders* (see element <funder>), who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor ref="http://www.allc.org/">Association for Literary and Linguistic
Computing</sponsor>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq.limited"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element sponsor
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.
   [3.12.2. Core Tags for Drama 3.12. Passages of Verse or Drama 7.2.4. Stage Directions]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.ascribed (@*who*) att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.placement (@*place*)

   @type   indicates the kind of stage direction.
      Status   Recommended

<stage>

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Note If the value mixed is used, it must be the only value. Multiple values may however be supplied if a single stage direction performs multiple functions, for example is both an entrance and a modifier.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l lg meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence rendition scriptNote tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The *who* attribute may be used to indicate more precisely the person or persons participating in the action described by the stage direction.

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse and
falls.</stage>
<!-- Middleton : Yorkshire Tragedy -->
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<!-- Lorraine Hansbury : a raisin in in the sun -->
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="entrance modifier">Enter Latrocinio disguised as an
empiric</stage>
<!-- Middleton: The Widow -->
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

Example

```
<l>Behold. <stage n="*" place="margin">Here the vp<lb/>per part of the
<hi>Scene</hi> open'd; when
     straight appear'd a Heauen, and all the <hi>Pure Artes</hi> sitting on
     two semi<lb/>circular ben<lb/>ches, one a<lb/>boue another: who sate
thus till the rest of the
  <hi>Prologue</hi> was spoken, which being ended, they descended in
     order within the <hi>Scene,</hi> whiles the Musicke plaid</stage> Our
   Poet knowing our free hearts</l>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stage
{
   tei_att.ascribed.attributes,
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   attribute type
   {
      list
      {
         (
            "setting"
          | "entrance"
          | "exit"
          | "business"
          | "novelistic"
          | "delivery"
          | "modifier"
          | "location"
          | "mixed"
```

```
            )*
        }
    }?,
    tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
     objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
     offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
     secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

     character data

Example

```
<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>
   SI NON LICET<lb/>
   NOBIS RO<lb/>
   manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>
 <lb/></rubric>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stamp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<state> contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or
     organization often at some specific time or for a specific date range. [13.3.1. Basic Principles
     13.3.2.1. Personal Characteristics]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @xml:base, @xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
     (*@rend, @style, @rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next,
     @prev, @exclude, @select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
     (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert, @resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.datable
     (*@calendar, @period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to*))
     (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom
     (*@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint,
     @datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence, @instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision, @unit, @quantity,
     @extent, @scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence*))) att.typed (*@type,
     @subtype*) att.naming (*@role, @nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key, @ref*))

Member of model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
     editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure

meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

certainty: precision

core: bibl biblStruct desc head label listBibl note p

header: biblFull

linking: ab

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: state

textcrit: witDetail

Note   Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder.

Example

```
<state ref="#SCHOL" type="status">
 <label>scholar</label>
</state>
```

Example

```
<org>
 <orgName notAfter="1960">The Silver Beetles</orgName>
 <orgName notBefore="1960">The Beatles</orgName>
 <state type="membership" from="1960-08"
  to="1962-05">
  <desc>
   <persName>John Lennon</persName>
   <persName>Paul McCartney</persName>
   <persName>George Harrison</persName>
   <persName>Stuart Sutcliffe</persName>
   <persName>Pete Best</persName>
```

```
       </desc>
     </state>
     <state type="membership" notBefore="1963">
      <desc>
       <persName>John Lennon</persName>
       <persName>Paul McCartney</persName>
       <persName>George Harrison</persName>
       <persName>Ringo Starr</persName>
      </desc>
     </state>
   </org>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="precision" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="state" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.headLike"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <classRef key="model.pLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.noteLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   </alternate>
  </alternate>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element state
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.naming.attributes,
   (
      tei_precision*,
      (
         tei_state+
       | (
            tei_model.headLike*,
            tei_model.pLike+,
            ( tei_model.noteLike | tei_model.biblLike )*
         )
       | ( tei_model.labelLike | tei_model.noteLike | tei_model.biblLike )*
```

```
        )
    )
}
```

<stdVals> (standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied. [2.3.3. The Editorial Practices Declaration 15.3.2. Declarable Elements]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<stdVals>
 <p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element stdVals
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike+
}
```

<street> contains a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located. [3.5.2. Addresses]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

Example

```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
```

Example

```
<street>
 <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road</street>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element street { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

\<styleDefDecl\> (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or renditional information is supplied elsewhere in the document. The specific version of the scheme may also be supplied. [2.3.5. The Default Style Definition Language Declaration]

Module   header

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable
(@*default*) att.styleDef (@*scheme*, @*schemeVersion*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

linking: ab

Example

```
<styleDefDecl scheme="css"
 schemeVersion="2.1"/>
<!-- ... -->
<tagsDecl>
 <rendition xml:id="boldface">font-weight: bold;</rendition>
 <rendition xml:id="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</rendition>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element styleDefDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.styleDef.attributes,
   tei_model.pLike*
}
```

<subst> (substitution) groups one or more deletions with one or more additions when the
combination is to be regarded as a single intervention in the text. [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))
att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions
(@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*,
@*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*))

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled
speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

core: add cb del gb lb milestone pb

linking: anchor

transcr: fw

Example

```
... are all included. <del hand="#RG">It is</del>
<subst>
 <add>T</add>
 <del>t</del>
</subst>he expressed
```

Example

```
that he and his Sister Mifs D — <lb/>who always lived with him, wd. be
<subst>
 <del>very</del>
 <lb/>
 <add>principally</add>
</subst> remembered in her Will.
```

Example

```
<ab>τ<subst>
  <add place="above">ῶν</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
   συνκυρόντ<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst>
   ἐργαστηρί<subst>
  <add place="above">ων</add>
  <del>α</del>
 </subst></ab>
```

Example

```
<subst>
 <del>
  <gap reason="illegible" quantity="5"
   unit="character"/>
```

```
  </del>
 <add>apple</add>
</subst>
```

Schematron <s:assert test="child::tei:add and child::tei:del"> <s:name/> must have at least one child add and at least one child del</s:assert>

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="add"/>
  <elementRef key="del"/>
  <classRef key="model.milestoneLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element subst
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   ( tei_add | tei_del | tei_model.milestoneLike )+
}
```

<substJoin> (substitution join) identifies a series of possibly fragmented additions, deletions or other revisions on a manuscript that combine to make up a single intervention in the text [11.3.1.5. Substitutions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem

musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName person personGrp placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

certainty: certainty precision

core: desc

Example

```
 While <del xml:id="r112">pondering</del> thus <add xml:id="r113">she
mus'd</add>, her pinions fann'd
<substJoin target="#r112 #r113"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.certLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element substJoin
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   ( tei_model.descLike | tei_model.certLike )*
}
```

<summary> contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements. [10.6. Intellectual Content]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

msdescription: decoDesc handDesc history layoutDesc msContents scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an epilogue.
 </summary>
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>
 <summary>Uses a mixture of Roman and Black Letter types.</summary>
 <typeNote>Antiqua typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian
     fonts.</typeNote>
 <typeNote>The black letter face is a variant of Schwabacher.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element summary { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

\<supplied\>

\<supplied\> signifies text supplied by the transcriber or editor for any reason; for example because the original cannot be read due to physical damage, or because of an obvious omission by the author or scribe. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.editLike (~~evidence~~, @*instant*) att.dimensions (@precision, @unit, @quantity, @extent, @scope) att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@**evidence**   *Status*   Optional

    Datatype   teidata.word

    Suggested values include: **parallel**   Characters supplied from a parallel version of this text, absent from this one

        previouseditor   Characters visible to a previous editor, now lost/unclear due to damage

@**reason**   *Status*   Required

    Legal values are: **lost**   Restoration of text completely lost from the surface

        omitted   Supplement of text erroneously omitted from the surface by the scribe/cutter

        subaudible   Editorial supplement of words subaudible to the native reader

        explanation   Editorial explanation of oblique text in original

        undefined   Text restored (e.g. from earlier witness or alternate copy) without specification of current state of this text

Member of   model.choicePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

Example

```
I am dr Sr yr
<supplied reason="illegible"
 source="#amanuensis_copy">very humble Servt</supplied>
Sydney Smith
```

Example

```
<supplied reason="omitted-in-original">Dedication</supplied> to the duke of
Bejar
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element supplied
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attribute.instant,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.precision,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
   tei_att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.atMost,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.min,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.max,
   tei_att.ranging.attribute.confidence,
   attribute evidence { "parallel" | "previouseditor" }?,
   attribute reason
   {
      "lost" | "omitted" | "subaudible" | "explanation" | "undefined"
   },
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

\<support\> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<objectDesc form="roll">
 <supportDesc>
  <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
   </support>
 </supportDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element support { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

\<supportDesc\> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1. Object Description]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@material a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the support

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **paper**

parch (parchment)

mixed

Contained by msdescription: objectDesc

May contain

core: p

header: extent

linking: ab

msdescription: collation condition foliation support

Example

```
<supportDesc>
 <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
  </support>
</supportDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="support" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="extent" minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="foliation"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   <elementRef key="collation"
    minOccurs="0"/>
   <elementRef key="condition"
    minOccurs="0"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element supportDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute material { "paper" | "parch" | "mixed" }?,
   (
      tei_model.pLike+
```

```
      | (
            tei_support?,
            tei_extent?,
            tei_foliation*,
            tei_collation?,
            tei_condition?
        )
    )
}
```

\<surface\> defines a written surface as a two-dimensional coordinate space, optionally grouping one or more graphic representations of that space, zones of interest within that space, and transcriptions of the writing within them. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.coordinated (*@start*, *@ulx*, *@uly*, *@lrx*, *@lry*, *@points*) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@attachment describes the method by which this surface is or was connected to the main surface
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.enumerated
Sample values include: **glued** glued in place
pinned pinned or stapled in place
sewn sewn in place

@flipping indicates whether the surface is attached and folded in such a way as to provide two writing surfaces
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.truthValue

Contained by: *transcr:* facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp zone
May contain
analysis: interp interpGrp
certainty: certainty precision
core: binaryObject cb desc gap gb graphic index label lb media milestone note pb
figures: figure notatedMusic
linking: anchor join link linkGrp
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan fw line listTranspose metamark space substJoin surface surfaceGrp zone

Note The \<surface\> element represents any two-dimensional space on some physical surface forming part of the source material, such as a piece of paper, a face of a monument, a billboard, a scroll, a leaf etc.
The coordinate space defined by this element may be thought of as a grid *lrx - ulx* units wide and *uly - lry* units high.
The \<surface\> element may contain graphic representations or transcriptions of written

zones, or both. The coordinate values used by every <zone> element contained by this element are to be understood with reference to the same grid.

Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200" lry="300">
  <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
   <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <elementRef key="zone"/>
    <elementRef key="line"/>
    <elementRef key="surface"/>
    <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
   </alternate>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surface
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.coordinated.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute attachment { text }?,
   attribute flipping { text }?,
   (
      ( tei_model.global | tei_model.labelLike | tei_model.graphicLike )*,
      (
         ( tei_zone | tei_line | tei_surface | tei_surfaceGrp ),
         tei_model.global*
      )*
   )
}
```

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Contained by

transcr: facsimile sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin surface surfaceGrp

Note   Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

Example

```
<sourceDoc>
 <surfaceGrp>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="200"
   lry="300">
   <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
  </surface>
 </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <elementRef key="surfaceGrp"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surfaceGrp
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( tei_model.global | tei_surface | tei_surfaceGrp )+
}
```

\<surname\> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.
[13.2.1. Personal Names]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.personal
(*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic
soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent
funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage
typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset org orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surname
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.personal.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<surplus\> marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or redundant. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)))

@reason one or more words indicating why this text is believed to be superfluous, e.g. *repeated*, *interpolated* etc.
Status Optional
Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

508

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
I am dr Sr yrs
<surplus reason="repeated">yrs</surplus>
Sydney Smith
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surplus
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

<surrogates> contains information about any representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [10.9. Additional Information]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,

@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

msdescription: additional

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<surrogates>
 <bibl>
  <title type="gmd">diapositive</title>
  <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno>
  <date>May 1984</date>
 </bibl>
 <bibl>
  <title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
  <idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno>
  <date>1972</date>
 </bibl>
</surrogates>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element surrogates { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.specialPara }
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [«#FTTAB1»]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Note If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: add corr del desc emph head hi item l meeting note orig p q quote ref reg said sic sp stage title

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: abstract change handNote licence rendition scriptNote sourceDesc tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance signatures source summary support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph

transcr: damage metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: binaryObject cb gap gb graphic head index lb media meeting milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic row

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows.

Any rendition information should be supplied using the global *rend* attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

Example

```
<table rows="4" cols="4">
 <head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
 <row role="label">
```

```
       <cell role="data"/>
       <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
       <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
       <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
       <cell role="data">5</cell>
       <cell role="data">8</cell>
       <cell role="data">128</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
       <cell role="data">3</cell>
       <cell role="data">6</cell>
       <cell role="data">36</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
       <cell role="data">3</cell>
       <cell role="data">5</cell>
       <cell role="data">20</cell>
      </row>
      <row role="data">
       <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
       <cell role="data">1</cell>
       <cell role="data">11</cell>
       <cell role="data">22</cell>
      </row>
     </table>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.headLike"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"/>
  </alternate>
  <alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="row"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
   <sequence minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
    <classRef key="model.global"
     minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded">
   <classRef key="model.divBottom"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element table
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute rows { text }?,
   attribute cols { text }?,
   (
      ( tei_model.headLike | tei_model.global )*,
      (
         ( tei_row, tei_model.global* )+
       | ( tei_model.graphicLike, tei_model.global* )+
      ),
      ( tei_model.divBottom, tei_model.global* )*
   )
}
```

\<tagUsage\> documents the usage of a specific element within a specified document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@gi (generic identifier) specifies the name (generic identifier) of the element indicated by the tag, within the namespace indicated by the parent \<namespace\> element.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.name

@occurs specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.count

@withId (with unique identifier) specifies the number of occurrences of this element within the text which bear a distinct value for the global *xml:id* attribute.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.count

@render specifies the identifier of a \<rendition\> element which defines how this element was rendered in the source text.

Deprecated will be removed on 2017-01-01

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The recommended way of specifying a default rendition for a set of elements is to use the *selector* attribute on the \<rendition\> element.

Contained by: header: namespace

May contain

513

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

   character data

Example

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="it" scheme="css"
  selector="foreign hi"> font-style: italic; </rendition>
<!-- ... -->
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"> Used to mark English words
italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
  <tagUsage gi="foreign">Used to mark non-English words in the copy
text.</tagUsage>
<!-- ... -->
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

Example

```
<tagsDecl>
<!-- deprecated usage -->
 <rendition xml:id="dit">Render using a slant or italic variant on the
current font</rendition>
<!-- ... -->
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="28" withId="2"
   render="#dit"> Used to mark English words
        italicized in the copy text.</tagUsage>
  <tagUsage gi="foreign" render="#dit">Used to mark non-English words in
the copy text.</tagUsage>
<!-- ... -->
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element tagUsage
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute gi { text },
```

514

```
    attribute occurs { text }?,
    attribute withId { text }?,
    attribute render { list { + } }?,
    tei_macro.limitedContent}
```

<tagsDecl> (tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to a document. [2.3.4. The Tagging Declaration 2.3. The Encoding Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

@partial indicates whether the element types listed exhaustively include all those found within <text>, or represent only a subset.

    Status Recommended

    Datatype teidata.truthValue

    Note TEI recommended practice is to specify this attribute. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to list each of the element types in the associated <text>, the value should be given as false. When the <tagUsage> elements inside <tagsDecl> are used to provide usage information or default renditions for only a subset of the elements types within the associated <text>, the value should be true.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

header: namespace rendition

Example

```
<tagsDecl partial="true">
 <rendition xml:id="rend-it" scheme="css"
  selector="emph hi name title">font-style: italic;</rendition>
 <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467"/>
  <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45"/>
 </namespace>
 <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
  <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
 </namespace>
</tagsDecl>
```

If the *partial* attribute were not specified here, the implication would be that the document in question contains only <hi>, <title>, and <para> elements.

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="rendition" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="namespace" minOccurs="0"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
```

```
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element tagsDecl
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute partial { text }?,
   ( tei_rendition*, tei_namespace* )
}
```

<taxonomy> defines a typology either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy. [2.3.7. The Classification Declaration]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Contained by

header: classDecl taxonomy

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct desc gloss listBibl

header: biblFull category taxonomy

msdescription: msDesc

Note Nested taxonomies are common in many fields, so the <taxonomy> element can be nested.

Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
 <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
 <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
  <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
   <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
   <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
   <catDesc>National</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
   <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
   <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
   <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
  </category>
 </category>
 <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
  <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
   <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
```

```
      </category>
      <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
       <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
      </category>
     </category>
   </taxonomy>
```

Example

```
     <taxonomy>
      <category xml:id="literature">
       <catDesc>Literature</catDesc>
       <category xml:id="poetry">
        <catDesc>Poetry</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="sonnet">
         <catDesc>Sonnet</catDesc>
         <category xml:id="shakesSonnet">
          <catDesc>Shakespearean Sonnet</catDesc>
         </category>
         <category xml:id="petraSonnet">
          <catDesc>Petrarchan Sonnet</catDesc>
         </category>
        </category>
        <category xml:id="haiku">
         <catDesc>Haiku</catDesc>
        </category>
       </category>
       <category xml:id="drama">
        <catDesc>Drama</catDesc>
       </category>
      </category>
      <category xml:id="meter">
       <catDesc>Metrical Categories</catDesc>
       <category xml:id="feet">
        <catDesc>Metrical Feet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="iambic">
         <catDesc>Iambic</catDesc>
        </category>
        <category xml:id="trochaic">
         <catDesc>trochaic</catDesc>
        </category>
       </category>
       <category xml:id="feetNumber">
        <catDesc>Number of feet</catDesc>
        <category xml:id="pentameter">
         <catDesc>>Pentameter</catDesc>
        </category>
        <category xml:id="tetrameter">
         <catDesc>>Tetrameter</catDesc>
        </category>
       </category>
      </category>
     </taxonomy>
     <!-- elsewhere in document -->
     <lg ana="#shakesSonnet #iambic #pentameter">
      <l>Shall I compare thee to a summer's day</l>
      <!-- ... -->
     </lg>
```

Content model

```
<content>
```

```
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
   </alternate>
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <alternate minOccurs="1"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <classRef key="model.glossLike"/>
     <classRef key="model.descLike"/>
    </alternate>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="category"/>
     <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
  </alternate>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <classRef key="model.biblLike"/>
   <alternate minOccurs="0"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="category"/>
    <elementRef key="taxonomy"/>
   </alternate>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element taxonomy
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   (
      (
         ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )+
       | (
            ( tei_model.glossLike | tei_model.descLike )+,
            ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )*
         )
      )
    | ( tei_model.biblLike, ( tei_category | tei_taxonomy )* )
   )
}
```

\<teiCorpus\> contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@version The version of the TEI scheme
 Status Optional
 Datatype teidata.version
 Default 5.0

Contained by teiCorpus
May contain
core: teiCorpus
header: teiHeader
textstructure: TEI text
transcr: facsimile sourceDoc
Note   Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text.

This element is mandatory when applicable.

Example

```xml
<teiCorpus version="5.2" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
 <teiHeader>
<!-- header for corpus -->
 </teiHeader>
 <TEI>
   <teiHeader>
<!-- header for first text -->
   </teiHeader>
   <text>
<!-- content of first text -->
   </text>
 </TEI>
 <TEI>
   <teiHeader>
<!-- header for second text -->
   </teiHeader>
   <text>
<!-- content of second text -->
   </text>
 </TEI>
<!-- more TEI elements here -->
</teiCorpus>
```

Content model

```xml
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="teiHeader"/>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
    <classRef key="model.resourceLike"
     minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
    <alternate minOccurs="0"
     maxOccurs="unbounded">
     <elementRef key="TEI"/>
     <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>
    </alternate>
   </sequence>
   <alternate minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded">
    <elementRef key="TEI"/>
    <elementRef key="teiCorpus"/>
```

```
      </alternate>
     </alternate>
   </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiCorpus
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute version { text }?,
   (
      tei_teiHeader,
      (
         ( tei_model.resourceLike+, ( tei_TEI | tei_teiCorpus )* )
       | ( tei_TEI | tei_teiCorpus )+
      )
   )
}
```

<teiHeader> (TEI header) supplies descriptive and declarative metadata associated with a digital resource or set of resources. [2.1.1. The TEI Header and Its Components 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc xenoData

Note   One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

Example

```
<teiHeader>
 <fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
   <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
   <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
    <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
   </respStmt>
   <respStmt>
    <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
    <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
   </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
   <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
   <address>
```

```
       <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
      </address>
      <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
      <availability>
       <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
      </availability>
      <date when="1968">1968</date>
     </publicationStmt>
     <sourceDesc>
      <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
            1968)</bibl>
     </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
    <encodingDesc>
     <projectDesc>
       <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of old-
spelling
            concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and
revised for use during the
            editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor,
1989).</p>
     </projectDesc>
     <editorialDecl>
      <correction>
       <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
      </correction>
      <normalization>
       <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and
ligatured
             forms are not encoded.</p>
      </normalization>
     </editorialDecl>
     <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
      <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]+)\.(.*)"
       replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//
lb[@n='$3'])">
       <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
order as that
             listed here: <list>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi></item>
        <item>a period</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi></item>
        <item>a space</item>
        <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi></item>
       </list></p>
      </cRefPattern>
     </refsDecl>
    </encodingDesc>
    <revisionDesc>
     <list>
      <item>
       <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
      <item>
       <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
     </list>
    </revisionDesc>
   </teiHeader>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
```

```
  <elementRef key="fileDesc"/>
  <classRef key="model.teiHeaderPart"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <elementRef key="revisionDesc"
   minOccurs="0"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_fileDesc, tei_model.teiHeaderPart*, tei_revisionDesc? )
}
```

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4. Terms, Glosses, Equivalents, and Descriptions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declaring (@*decls*) att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*) att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*) att.sortable (@*sortKey*) att.cReferencing (@*cRef*)

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi index item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote keywords language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core:	abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear
figures:	figure notatedMusic
gaiji:	g
header:	idno
linking:	anchor join link linkGrp seg
msdescription:	catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates:	addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname
textcrit:	app witDetail
transcr:	addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
	character data
Note	When this element appears within an \<index\> element, it is understood to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for that location. Elsewhere, it is understood simply to indicate that its content is to be regarded as a technical or specialised term. It may be associated with a \<gloss\> element by means of its *ref* attribute; alternatively a \<gloss\> element may point to a \<term\> element by means of its *target* attribute.

In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The \<term\> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the \<term\> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occuring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the *ref* attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the *key* attribute). Because the mutually exclusive *target* and *cRef* attributes overlap with the function of the *ref* attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

Example

```
A computational device that infers structure
from grammatical strings of words is known as a <term>parser</term>, and
much of the history
of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.
```

Example

```
We may define <term xml:id="TDPV1" rend="sc">discoursal point of
view</term> as
<gloss target="#TDPV1">the relationship, expressed
   through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
addresser, and the
   fiction.</gloss>
```

Example

```
We may define <term ref="#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>
as
<gloss xml:id="TDPV2">the relationship, expressed
   through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other
```

```
        addresser, and the
          fiction.</gloss>
```

Example

```
      We discuss Leech's concept of
      <term ref="myGlossary.xml#TDPV2" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>
      below.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element term
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declaring.attributes,
    tei_att.pointing.attributes,
    tei_att.typed.attributes,
    tei_att.canonical.attributes,
    tei_att.sortable.attributes,
    tei_att.cReferencing.attributes,
    tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

\<text\> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4. Default Text Structure 15.1. Varieties of Composite Text]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declaring (*@decls*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

core: teiCorpus

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

analysis: interp interpGrp

certainty: certainty precision

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: addSpan delSpan fw listTranspose metamark space substJoin

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

Example

```
<text>
 <front>
  <docTitle>
   <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
 </front>
 <body>
  <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
  <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
 </body>
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
 <front>
<!-- front matter for the whole group -->
 </front>
 <group>
  <text>
<!-- first text -->
  </text>
  <text>
<!-- second text -->
  </text>
 </group>
</text>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="front"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
  <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="body"/>
   <elementRef key="group"/>
  </alternate>
  <classRef key="model.global"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="back"/>
   <classRef key="model.global"
    minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

525

```
element text
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declaring.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   (
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_front, tei_model.global* )?,
      ( tei_body | tei_group ),
      tei_model.global*,
      ( tei_back, tei_model.global* )?
   )
}
```

\<textClass> (text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc. [2.4.3. The Text Classification]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.declarable (@*default*)

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: catRef classCode keywords

Example

```
<taxonomy>
 <category xml:id="acprose">
  <catDesc>Academic prose</catDesc>
 </category>
<!-- other categories here -->
</taxonomy>
<!-- ... -->
<textClass>
 <catRef target="#acprose"/>
 <classCode scheme="http://www.udcc.org">001.9</classCode>
 <keywords scheme="http://authorities.loc.gov">
  <list>
   <item>End of the world</item>
   <item>History - philosophy</item>
  </list>
 </keywords>
</textClass>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <elementRef key="classCode"/>
  <elementRef key="catRef"/>
```

```
   <elementRef key="keywords"/>
  </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textClass
{
    tei_att.global.attributes,
    tei_att.declarable.attributes,
    ( tei_classCode | tei_catRef | tei_keywords )*
}
```

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.4. Imprint, Size of a Document, and Reprint Information 10.6.6. Languages and Writing Systems]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

  @mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.
    Status Optional
    Datatype teidata.language

  @otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.
    Status Optional
    Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of teidata.language separated by whitespace

Member of model.biblPart model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: analytic bibl monogr series

msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   This element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the
bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information
should be provided by means of the global *xml:lang* attribute attached to the element
containing the description.

In all cases, languages should be identified by means of a standardized 'language tag'
generated according to BCP 47. Additional documentation for the language may be
provided by a <language> element in the TEI Header.

Example

```
<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with
Latin
    glosses</textLang>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element textLang
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute mainLang { text }?,
   attribute otherLangs { list { * } }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4. Dates and Times]

Module   core

Attributes   Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.datable
(@*calendar*, @*period*) (att.datable.w3c (@*when*, @*notBefore*, @*notAfter*, @*from*, @*to*))
(att.datable.iso (@*when-iso*, @*notBefore-iso*, @*notAfter-iso*, @*from-iso*, @*to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom
(@*when-custom*, @*notBefore-custom*, @*notAfter-custom*, @*from-custom*, @*to-custom*, @*datingPoint*,
@*datingMethod*)) att.duration (att.duration.w3c (@*dur*)) (att.duration.iso (@*dur-iso*)) att.editLike
(@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging
(@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*))) att.typed (@*type*, @*subtype*)

Member of   model.dateLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email
emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label measure meeting
mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled
speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode correspAction creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck — <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element time
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   tei_att.duration.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
}
```

\<title\> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. Titles, Authors, and Editors 2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2.5. The Series Statement]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.typed (~~type~~, *@subtype*)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

> *Derived from* att.typed
>
> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Sample values include:* **main** main title
>
> > **sub** (subordinate) subtitle, title of part
> >
> > **alt** (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which the work is also known
> >
> > **short** abbreviated form of title
> >
> > **desc** (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning as a title
>
> *Note* This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and processing them according to their type; where such specialized processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be enclosed within a single \<title\> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Legal values are:* **a** (analytic) the title applies to an analytic item, such as an article, poem, or other work published as part of a larger item.
>
> > **m** (monographic) the title applies to a monograph such as a book or other item considered to be a distinct publication, including single volumes of multi-volume works
> >
> > **j** (journal) the title applies to any serial or periodical publication such as a journal, magazine, or newspaper

> **s** (series) the title applies to a series of otherwise distinct publications such
> as a collection
>
> **u** (unpublished) the title applies to any unpublished material (including
> theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)
>
> *Note* The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title
> appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level 'a', and
> one appearing within a <series> element of level 's'. For this reason, the
> *level* attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be
> unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value
> should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine analytic author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct
editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure
meeting mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs
said series sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl
handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote seriesStmt sponsor tagUsage
titleStmt typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem
msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol
signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email
emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure
measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said
sic soCalled stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent
listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region
roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The attributes *key* and *ref*, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the
canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in
some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere
containing the canonical form of the title.

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
    a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
    18-21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
    edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
 <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
 <title type="sub">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.paraContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element title
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.canonical.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attribute.subtype,
   tei_att.datable.attributes,
   attribute type { text }?,
   attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
   tei_macro.paraContent}
```

\<titleStmt\> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. The Title Statement 2.2. The File Description]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor meeting respStmt title

header: funder principal sponsor

Example

```
<titleStmt>
 <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
transcription</title>
 <respStmt>
  <resp>compiled by</resp>
  <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
 </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="title" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <classRef key="model.respLike"
   minOccurs="0" maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element titleStmt
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_title+, tei_model.respLike* )
}
```

<transcriptionDesc> describes the set of transcription conventions used, particularly for spoken material. [8.2. Documenting the Source of Transcribed Speech]

Module spoken

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

   @ident supplies an identifier for the encoding convention, independent of any version number.

      Status Required

      Datatype teidata.name

   @version supplies a version number for the encoding conventions used, if any.

      Status Optional

      Datatype teidata.versionNumber

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: desc label p ptr ref

linking: ab

Example

```
<transcriptionDesc ident="HIAT"
 version="2004"/>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <classRef key="model.labelLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.ptrLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element transcriptionDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute ident { text },
   attribute version { text }?,
   ( tei_model.labelLike | tei_model.ptrLike | tei_model.pLike )*
}
```

\<transpose\> describes a single textual transposition as an ordered list of at least two pointers specifying the order in which the elements indicated should be re-combined. [11.3.4.5. Transpositions]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

transcr: listTranspose

May contain

core: ptr

Note   Transposition is usually indicated in a document by a metamark such as a wavy line or numbering.

The order in which \<ptr\> elements appear within a \<transpose\> element should correspond with the desired order, as indicated by the metamark.

Example

```
<transpose>
 <ptr target="#ib02"/>
 <ptr target="#ib01"/>
</transpose>
```

The transposition recorded here indicates that the content of the element with identifier ib02 should appear before the content of the element with identifier ib01.

Content model

```
<content>
 <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <elementRef key="ptr"/>
  <elementRef key="ptr" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
 </sequence>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element transpose { tei_att.global.attributes, ( tei_ptr, tei_ptr+ ) }
```

<typeDesc> contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [10.7.2.1. Writing]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: typeNote

linking: ab

msdescription: summary

Example

```
<typeDesc>
 <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the
    15th century</p>
</typeDesc>
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>
 <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua)
typefaces</summary>
 <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing
    similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</typeNote>
 <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <classRef key="model.pLike" minOccurs="1"
   maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  <sequence minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
   <elementRef key="summary" minOccurs="0"/>
```

```
   <elementRef key="typeNote" minOccurs="1"
    maxOccurs="unbounded"/>
  </sequence>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element typeDesc
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   ( tei_model.pLike+ | ( tei_summary?, tei_typeNote+ ) )
}
```

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [10.7.2. Writing, Decoration, and Other Notations]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.handFeatures (@*scribe*, @*scribeRef*, @*script*, @*scriptRef*, @*medium*, @*scope*)

Contained by

msdescription: typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address bibl biblStruct binaryObject cb choice cit corr date del desc distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index l label lb lg list listBibl measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig p pb ptr q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled sp stage term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

linking: ab anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

spoken: annotationBlock

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
<typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong
Italianate influence.
 </typeNote>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.specialPara"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element typeNote
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.handFeatures.attributes,
   tei_macro.specialPara}
```

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. Damage, Illegibility, and Supplied Text 3.4.3. Additions, Deletions, and Omissions]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

    Status Optional

    Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<div>
 <head>Rx</head>
 <p>500 mg <unclear reason="illegible">placebo</unclear></p>
</div>
```

    Note One or more words may be used to describe the reason; usually each word will refer to a single cause. Typical examples might thus include *faded*, *illegible*, *eccentric_ductus background_noise*, *passing_truck*,etc.

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

    Deprecated will be removed on 2017-08-01

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.pointer

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.enumerated

    Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

        mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

> **smoke** damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope choice citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

gaiji: g

> character data

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21. Certainty, Precision, and Responsibility.

> The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear, and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

> The *hand* attribute points to a definition of the hand concerned, as further discussed in section 11.3.2.1. Document Hands.

Example

```
<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element unclear
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.editLike.attributes,
   attribute reason { list { + } }?,
   attribute hand { text }?,
   attribute agent { text }?,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

<undo> indicates one or more marked-up interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked for cancellation. [11.3.4.4. Confirmation, Cancellation, and Reinstatement of Modifications]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.spanning (@*spanTo*) att.transcriptional (@*status*, @*cause*, @*seq*) (att.editLike (@*evidence*, @*instant*) (att.dimensions (@*precision*, @*unit*, @*quantity*, @*extent*, @*scope*) (att.ranging (@*atLeast*, @*atMost*, @*min*, @*max*, @*confidence*)))) (att.written (@*hand*))

@target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are to be reverted or undone.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.linePart model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: am damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<line>This is <del change="#s2" rend="overstrike">
  <seg xml:id="undo-a">just some</seg>
    sample <seg xml:id="undo-b">text</seg>,
    we need</del>
 <add change="#s2">not</add>
   a real example.</line>
<undo target="#undo-a #undo-b"
 rend="dotted" change="#s3"/>
```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "This is just some sample text, we need a real example" is written

- At stage s2, "just some sample text, we need" is deleted by overstriking, and "not" is added

- At stage s3, parts of the deletion are cancelled by underdotting, thus reinstating the words "just some" and "text".

Content model   `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element undo
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.spanning.attributes,
   tei_att.transcriptional.attributes,
   attribute target { list { + } }?,
   empty
}
```

\<value\> contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis. [5.2.1. Character Properties]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Example

```
<value>unknown</value>
```

Content model   `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element value { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.xtext }
```

\<variantEncoding\> declares the method used to encode text-critical variants. [«#TCAPEN»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*))

@method indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **location-referenced** apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.

> > **double-end-point** apparatus indicates the precise locations of the
> > beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.
> >
> > **parallel-segmentation** alternate readings of a passage are given in
> > parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary.
> >
> > *Note* The value 'parallel-segmentation' requires in-line encoding of the
> > apparatus.
>
> @location indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external
> to it.
>
> > *Status* Required
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
> >
> > *Schematron* <sch:rule context="tei:variantEncoding">
> > <sch:assert test="(@location != 'external') or (@method !=
> > 'parallel-segmentation')"> The @location value "external" is inconsistent
> > with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.</
> > sch:assert> </sch:rule>
> >
> > *Legal values are:* **internal** apparatus appears within the running text.
> >
> > **external** apparatus appears outside the base text.
> >
> > *Note* The value 'external' is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method
> > of apparatus markup.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<variantEncoding method="location-referenced"
 location="external"/>
```

Content model

Schema Declaration

```
element variantEncoding
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   attribute method
   {
      "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation"
   },
   attribute location { "internal" | "external" }
   >>
   tei:constraintSpec
   [
      ident = "variantEncodingLocation"
      scheme = "isoschematron"
      " "
      """ The @location value "external" is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation m
   ],
   empty
}
```

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1. Linguistic Segment
Categories]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.segLike
(*@function*) (att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*)) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))
(att.fragmentable (*@part*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@lemma provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.
    Status Optional
    Datatype teidata.text

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example
in an online lexicon.
    Status Optional
    Datatype teidata.pointer

Member of model.linePart model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph
expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure mentioned name note
num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term
textLang time title

figures: cell

header: change distributor edition extent geoDecl handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add cb choice corr del expan gap gb hi index lb milestone note orig pb reg sic unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Example

```
    <w type="verb" lemma="hit"
     lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/
    hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m></w>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <elementRef key="seg"/>
  <elementRef key="w"/>
  <elementRef key="m"/>
  <elementRef key="c"/>
  <elementRef key="pc"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <classRef key="model.lPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.hiLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.pPart.edit"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element w
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.segLike.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   attribute lemma { text }?,
   attribute lemmaRef { text }?,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike   | tei_seg   | tei_w   | tei_m   | tei_c   | tei_pc   | tei_
}
```

<watermark> contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device. [10.3.3. Watermarks and Stamps]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl
          handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent
          decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material
          musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures
          source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat
          geogName offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap
          gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note
          num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
          objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location
          offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace
          secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo
          character data

Example

```
<support>
 <p>
  <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark>
watermark</p>
</support>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element watermark { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_macro.phraseSeq }
```

<width> contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex. [10.3.4. Dimensions]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

analysis: phr s

core: abbr add addrLine author bibl biblScope citedRange corr date del desc distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi item l label measure measureGrp meeting mentioned name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said sic soCalled speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority catDesc change classCode creation distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence principal rendition scriptNote sponsor tagUsage typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint

transcr: damage fw metamark mod retrace secl supplied surplus

May contain

gaiji: g

character data

Note If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the 'depth' axis.

Example

```
<width unit="in">4</width>
```

Content model `<content> <macroRef key="macro.xtext"/></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element width
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.dimensions.attributes,
   tei_macro.xtext}
```

\<wit\> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation. [«#TCAPLW»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.rdgPart (*@wit*)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: app lem rdg rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   This element represents the same information as that provided by the *wit* attribute of the reading; it may be used to record the exact form of the sigla given in the source edition, when that is of interest.

Example

```
<rdg wit="#El #Hg">Experience</rdg>
<wit>Ellesmere, Hengwryt</wit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element wit
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.rdgPart.attributes,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.placement (@*place*) att.pointing (@*targetLang*, @*target*, @*evaluate*)

    @wit (witnesses) indicates the sigil or sigla identifying the witness or witnesses to which the detail refers.

        Status Required

        Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

    @type describes the type of information given about the witness.

        Status Optional

        Datatype teidata.enumerated

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: m phr s w

core: abbr add addrLine address author bibl biblScope biblStruct cit citedRange corr date del distinct editor email emph expan foreign gloss head headItem headLabel hi imprint item l label lg list measure mentioned monogr name note num orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg resp rs said series sic soCalled sp speaker stage street term textLang time title

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: glyph

header: authority change classCode distributor edition extent funder geoDecl handNote language licence notesStmt principal scriptNote sponsor typeNote

linking: ab seg

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions adminInfo catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName birth bloc country death district event floruit forename genName geogFeat geogName location offset org orgName persName person personGrp place placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

textstructure: back body dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph floatingText front group text

transcr: damage fw line metamark mod retrace secl sourceDoc supplied surface surfaceGrp surplus zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp m pc phr s w

certainty: certainty precision

core: abbr add address binaryObject cb choice corr date del distinct email emph expan foreign gap gb gloss graphic hi index lb measure measureGrp media mentioned milestone name note num orig pb ptr ref reg rs sic soCalled term time title unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan am damage delSpan ex fw handShift listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace secl space subst substJoin supplied surplus undo

character data

Note   The <witDetail> element should be regarded as a specialized type of <note> element; it is synonymous with <note type='witnessDetail'>, but differs in the omission of some attributes seldom applicable to notes within critical apparatus, and in the provision of the *wit* attribute, which permits an application to extract all annotation concerning a particular witness or witnesses from the apparatus. It also differs in that the location of a <witDetail> element is not significant and may not be used to imply the point of attachment for the annotation; this must be explicitly given by means of the *target* attribute.

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
 <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
  <lem xml:id="W026x" wit="#El #HG">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
 </rdgGrp>
</app>
<witDetail target="#W026x" resp="#PR"
 wit="#El" type="presentation">Ornamental capital.</witDetail>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.phraseSeq"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element witDetail
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.placement.attributes,
   tei_att.pointing.attributes,
   attribute wit { list { + } },
   attribute type { text }?,
   tei_macro.phraseSeq}
```

<witEnd> (fragmented witness end) indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module   textcrit

Attributes   Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.rdgPart
(@*wit*)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
 <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
  <witEnd/></rdg>
</app>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element witEnd { tei_att.global.attributes, tei_att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

<witStart> (fragmented witness start) indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a
fragmentary witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition
(@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*,
@*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change
(@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.rdgPart
(@*wit*)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Example

```
<app>
 <lem wit="#El #Hg">Auctoritee</lem>
 <rdg wit="#La #Ra2">auctorite</rdg>
 <rdg wit="#X">
  <witStart/>auctorite</rdg>
</app>
```

Content model `<content></content>`

Schema Declaration

```
element witStart
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.rdgPart.attributes,
   empty
}
```

\<witness\> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@*xml:id*, @*n*, @*xml:lang*, @*xml:base*, @*xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (@*rend*, @*style*, @*rendition*)) (att.global.linking (@*corresp*, @*synch*, @*sameAs*, @*copyOf*, @*next*, @*prev*, @*exclude*, @*select*)) (att.global.analytic (@*ana*)) (att.global.facs (@*facs*)) (att.global.change (@*change*)) (att.global.responsibility (@*cert*, @*resp*)) (att.global.source (@*source*)) att.sortable (@*sortKey*)

Contained by

textcrit: listWit

May contain

core: abbr address bibl biblStruct choice cit date desc distinct email emph expan foreign gloss hi label list listBibl measure measureGrp mentioned name num ptr q quote ref rs said soCalled stage term time title

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName bloc country district forename genName geo geogFeat geogName listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location offset orgName persName placeName region roleName settlement state surname

textcrit: listApp listWit

textstructure: floatingText

transcr: am ex subst

character data

Note The content of the \<witness\> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

Example

```
<listWit>
 <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
 <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
     Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
 <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
     (see further <ptr target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/
>)</witness>
</listWit>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <macroRef key="macro.limitedContent"/>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element witness
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.sortable.attributes,
   tei_macro.limitedContent}
```

<xenoData> (non-TEI metadata) provides a container element into which metadata in non-TEI formats may be placed. [2.5. Non-TEI Metadata]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain Character data only

Example This example presumes that the prefix dc has been bound to the namespace `http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/` and the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#`. Note: The *about* attribute on the `rdf:Description` in this example gives a URI indicating the resource to which the metadata contained therein refer. The `rdf:Description` in the second <xenoData> block has a blank *about*, meaning it is pointing at the *current* document, so the RDF is about the document within which it is contained, i.e. the TEI document containing the <xenoData> block. Similarly, any kind of relative URI may be used, including fragment identifiers (see SG-id). Do note, however, that if the contents of the <xenoData> block are to be extracted and used elsewhere, any relative URIs will have to be resolved accordingly.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/"
   xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#">
 <rdf:RDF>
  <rdf:Description rdf:about="http://www.worldcat.org/oclc/606621663">
   <dc:title>The description of a new world, called the blazing-
world</dc:title>
   <dc:creator>The Duchess of Newcastle</dc:creator>
   <dc:date>1667</dc:date>
   <dc:identifier>British Library, 8407.h.10</dc:identifier>
   <dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject></rdf:Description>
 </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
<xenoData>
 <rdf:RDF>
  <rdf:Description rdf:about="">
   <dc:title>The Description of a New World, Called the Blazing-World,
1668</dc:title>
   <dc:creator>Cavendish, Margaret (Lucas), Duchess of
Newcastle</dc:creator>
   <dc:publisher>Women Writers Project</dc:publisher>
   <dc:date>2002-02-12</dc:date>
   <dc:subject>utopian fiction</dc:subject></rdf:Description>
 </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix rdf is bound to the namespace `http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#`, the prefix dc is bound to the namespace `http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/`, and the prefix cc is bound to the namespace `http://web.resource.org/cc/`.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:cc="http://web.resource.org/cc/"
   xmlns:rdf="http://www.w3.org/1999/02/22-rdf-syntax-ns#"
```

```
      xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/">
  <rdf:RDF>
   <cc:Work rdf:about="">
    <dc:title>Applied Software Project Management - review</dc:title>
    <dc:type rdf:resource="http://purl.org/dc/dcmitype/Text"/>
    <dc:license rdf:resource="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/
uk/"/>
   </cc:Work>
   <cc:License rdf:about="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/2.0/
uk/">
    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Reproduction"/>
    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Distribution"/>
    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Notice"/>
    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/Attribution"/>
    <cc:permits rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/DerivativeWorks"/>
    <cc:requires rdf:resource="http://web.resource.org/cc/ShareAlike"/>
   </cc:License>
  </rdf:RDF>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix `dc` is again bound to the namespace `http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/`, and the prefix `oai_dc` is bound to the namespace `http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/`.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:oai_dc="http://www.openarchives.org/OAI/2.0/oai_dc/"
   xmlns:dc="http://purl.org/dc/elements/1.1/">
 <oai_dc:dc>
  <dc:title>The colonial despatches of Vancouver Island and British
       Columbia 1846-1871: 11566, CO 60/2, p. 291; received 13 November.
       Trevelyan to Merivale (Permanent Under-Secretary)</dc:title>
  <dc:date>1858-11-12</dc:date>
  <dc:creator>Trevelyan</dc:creator>
  <dc:publisher>University of Victoria Humanities Computing and Media
       Centre, and UVic Libraries</dc:publisher>
  <dc:type>InteractiveResource</dc:type>
  <dc:format>application/xhtml+xml</dc:format>
  <dc:type>text</dc:type>
  <dc:identifier>http://bcgenesis.uvic.ca/getDoc.htm?
id=B585TE13.scx</dc:identifier>
  <dc:rights>This document is licensed under a Creative Commons …
</dc:rights>
  <dc:language>(SCHEME=ISO639) en</dc:language>
  <dc:source>Transcribed from microfilm and/or original documents, and
       marked up in TEI P5 XML. The interactive XHTML resource is
generated
       from the XHTML using XQuery and XSLT.</dc:source>
  <dc:source>repository: CO</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coNumber: 60</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coVol: 2</dc:source>
  <dc:source>page: 291</dc:source>
  <dc:source>coRegistration: 11566</dc:source>
  <dc:source>received: received 13 November</dc:source>
  <dc:subject>Trevelyan, Sir Charles Edward</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Merivale, Herman</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Elliot, T. Frederick</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Moody, Colonel Richard Clement</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Lytton, Sir Edward George Earle Bulwer</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Jadis, Vane</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>Carnarvon, Earl</dc:subject>
  <dc:subject>British Columbia</dc:subject>
  <dc:description>British Columbia correspondence: Public Offices
```

```
            document (normally correspondence between government
            departments)</dc:description>
   </oai_dc:dc>
</xenoData>
```

Example In this example, the prefix mods is bound to the namespace http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3.

```
<xenoData
   xmlns:mods="http://www.loc.gov/mods/v3">
 <mods:mods>
  <mods:titleInfo>
   <mods:title>Academic adaptation and cross-cultural
          learning experiences of Chinese students at American
          universities</mods:title>
   <mods:subTitle>a narrative inquiry</mods:subTitle>
  </mods:titleInfo>
  <mods:name type="personal"
   authority="local">
   <mods:namePart/>
   <mods:role>
    <mods:roleTerm authority="marcrelator"
     type="text">Author</mods:roleTerm>
   </mods:role>
   <mods:affiliation>Northeastern University</mods:affiliation>
   <mods:namePart type="given">Hong</mods:namePart>
   <mods:namePart type="family">Zhang</mods:namePart>
  </mods:name>
  <mods:name type="personal"
   authority="local">
   <mods:namePart/>
   <mods:role>
    <mods:roleTerm authority="local"
     type="text">Advisor</mods:roleTerm>
   </mods:role>
   <mods:namePart type="given">Liliana</mods:namePart>
   <mods:namePart type="family">Meneses</mods:namePart>
  </mods:name>

 <!-- ... -->
  <mods:typeOfResource>text</mods:typeOfResource>
  <mods:genre>doctoral theses</mods:genre>
  <mods:originInfo>
   <mods:place>
    <mods:placeTerm type="text">Boston (Mass.)</mods:placeTerm>
   </mods:place>
   <mods:publisher>Northeastern University</mods:publisher>
   <mods:copyrightDate encoding="w3cdtf"
    keyDate="yes">2013</mods:copyrightDate>
  </mods:originInfo>
  <mods:language>
   <mods:languageTerm authority="iso639-2b"
    type="code">eng</mods:languageTerm>
  </mods:language>
  <mods:physicalDescription>
   <mods:form authority="marcform">electronic</mods:form>
   <mods:digitalOrigin>born digital</mods:digitalOrigin>
  </mods:physicalDescription>
 <!-- ... -->
 </mods:mods>
</xenoData>
```

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <textNode/>
  <anyElement/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element xenoData
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.declarable.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   ( text | anyElement-xenoData )
}
```

\<zone\> defines any two-dimensional area within a <surface> element. [11.1. Digital Facsimiles 11.2.2. Embedded Transcription]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@xml:base*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*)) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) (att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) (att.global.source (*@source*)) att.coordinated (*@start*, *@ulx*, *@uly*, *@lrx*, *@lry*, *@points*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.written (*@hand*)

    @rotate indicates the amount by which this zone has been rotated clockwise, with respect to the normal orientation of the parent <surface> element as implied by the dimensions given in the <msDesc> element or by the coordinates of the <surface> itself. The orientation is expressed in arc degrees.

    Status Optional

    Datatype teidata.count

    Default 0

Member of model.linePart

Contained by

transcr: line surface zone

May contain

analysis: c interp interpGrp pc w

certainty: certainty precision

core: add binaryObject cb choice del gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb unclear

figures: figure notatedMusic

linking: anchor join link linkGrp seg

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan damage delSpan fw handShift line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace space substJoin surface undo zone

    character data

Note The position of every zone for a given surface is always defined by reference to the coordinate system defined for that surface.

A graphic element contained by a zone represents the whole of the zone.

A zone may be of any shape. The attribute *points* may be used to define a polygonal zone, using the coordinate system defined by its parent surface.

Example

```
<surface ulx="14.54" uly="16.14" lrx="0"
 lry="0">
 <graphic url="stone.jpg"/>
 <zone points="4.6,6.3 5.25,5.85 6.2,6.6 8.19222,7.4125 9.89222,6.5875
10.9422,6.1375 11.4422,6.7125 8.21722,8.3125 6.2,7.65"/>
</surface>
```

This example defines a non-rectangular zone: see the illustration in section PH-surfzone.

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="50" uly="20" lrx="400"
  lry="280">
  <zone ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="500" lry="321">
   <graphic url="graphic.png "/>
  </zone>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

This example defines a zone which has been defined as larger than its parent surface in order to match the dimensions of the graphic it contains.

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.graphicLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="surface"/>
  <classRef key="model.linePart"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Schema Declaration

```
element zone
{
   tei_att.global.attributes,
   tei_att.coordinated.attributes,
   tei_att.typed.attributes,
   tei_att.written.attributes,
   attribute rotate { text }?,
   (
      text
    | tei_model.graphicLike    | tei_model.global    | tei_surface    | tei_model.linePar
}
```

11.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address.

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]
model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district
geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs] addrLine postBox postCode
street

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or email address.

Module tei

Used by location model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data

Members address email

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statement

Module tei

Used by availability

Members licence

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by cit event listBibl location model.inter model.msItemPart model.personPart org place
relatedItem sourceDesc state taxonomy

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description.

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart[biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author
editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] availability bibl citedRange edition extent
listRelation msIdentifier relatedItem series textLang

model.certLike groups elements which are used to indicate uncertainty or precision of other elements.

Module tei

Used by certainty gap interp join precision space substJoin

Members certainty precision

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation.

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr am corr ex expan orig reg seg sic supplied unclear

---

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by body div epigraph figure

Members model.divPart[model.divPart.spoken[annotationBlock] model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p]
lg sp] model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc] model.egLike
model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson
listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText
q said] model.stageLike[stage]]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content
models, including those for textual divisions.

---

model.correspActionPart groups elements which define the parts (usually names, dates and places) of one action related to the correspondence.

Module tei

Used by correspAction

Members model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]
model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district
geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs] note

---

model.correspContextPart groups elements which may appear as part of the correspContext element

Module tei

Used by correspContext

Members model.pLike[ab p] model.ptrLike[ptr ref] note

---

model.correspDescPart groups together metadata elements for describing correspondence

Module tei

Used by correspDesc

Members correspAction correspContext note

---

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions.

Module tei

Used by imprint model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data

Members date time

---

model.descLike groups elements which contain a description of their function.

Module tei

Used by category certainty gap glyph graphic interp interpGrp join media precision schemaRef space substJoin taxonomy

Members desc

---

model.dimLike groups elements which describe a measurement forming part of the physical dimensions of some object.

Module tei

Used by dimensions

Members depth height width

---

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body div figure front group lg list table

Members model.divBottomPart model.divWrapper[dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting]

---

model.divGenLike groups elements used to represent a structural division which is generated rather than explicitly present in the source.

Module tei

Used by body div

Members divGen

---

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front lem rdg

Members div

---

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions.

Module tei

Used by lem macro.specialPara model.common rdg

Members model.divPart.spoken[annotationBlock] model.lLike[l] model.pLike[ab p] lg sp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the model.inter class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

---

model.divPart.spoken groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within spoken texts.

Module spoken

Used by model.divPart

Members annotationBlock

Note Spoken texts may be structured in many ways; elements in this class are typically larger units such as turns or utterances.

---

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by body div group lg list

Members model.divTopPart[model.headLike[head]] model.divWrapper[dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting]

---

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division.

Module tei

Used by model.divTop

Members model.headLike[head]

---

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division.

Module tei

Used by model.divBottom model.divTop

Members dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph meeting

---

model.editorialDeclPart groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by editorialDecl

Members correction hyphenation interpretation normalization punctuation quotation segmentation stdVals

---

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed.

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title

---

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members charDecl classDecl editorialDecl geoDecl listPrefixDef projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl schemaRef styleDefDecl tagsDecl transcriptionDesc variantEncoding

---

model.eventLike groups elements which describe events.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* model.orgPart model.personPart place
> *Members* event listEvent

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* back front
> *Members* model.frontPart.drama divGen listBibl

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* am bibl date dateline docImprint head idno interp l lem line m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext measureGrp origDate pc rdg series time w
> *Members* g

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* address back bibl body cit date dateline div docImprint docTitle epigraph figure floatingText front group head imprint l lem lg line list m macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara msItem origDate person personGrp rdg series sourceDoc sp surface surfaceGrp table text time w zone
> *Members* model.global.edit[addSpan app delSpan gap space] model.global.meta[certainty index interp interpGrp join link linkGrp listTranspose precision substJoin] model.global.spoken model.milestoneLike[anchor cb fw gb lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note witDetail] figure metamark notatedMusic

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* model.global
> *Members* addSpan app delSpan gap space

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements.

> *Module* tei
> *Used by* model.global
> *Members* certainty index interp interpGrp join link linkGrp listTranspose precision substJoin
> *Note* Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same divison as the elements that they

relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

---

model.glossLike groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

Module tei

Used by category taxonomy

Members gloss

---

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects.

Module tei

Used by facsimile figure glyph model.phrase sourceDoc surface table zone

Members binaryObject graphic media

---

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by divGen event figure listApp listBibl listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation listWit model.divTopPart msDesc msFrag msPart org place state table

Members head

---

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed.

Module tei

Used by m model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

Members hi

---

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi]

---

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.

Module tei

Used by imprint model.biblPart

Members biblScope distributor pubPlace publisher

---

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by head l lem macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent macro.specialPara model.common
rdg

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc] model.egLike
model.labelLike[desc label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson
listPlace listWit table] model.oddDecl model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText
q said] model.stageLike[stage]

---

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by head lg macro.paraContent model.divPart sp

Members l

---

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by application event lg location model.inter notatedMusic org place state surface
transcriptionDesc

Members desc label

---

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements primarily intended for transcription of existing sources.

Module tei

Used by catDesc creation macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title]
model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date
time] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName]
model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district
geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs]] model.pPart.editorial[abbr
am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus
locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark]
model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref]

---

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

Module tei

Used by line zone

Members model.hiLike[hi] add c choice damage del handShift line mod pc redo retrace seg unclear
undo w zone

---

model.listLike groups list-like elements.

Module tei

Used by abstract back model.inter sourceDesc sp

Members list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning.

Module tei

Used by location measureGrp model.pPart.data

Members depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems.

Module tei

Used by listBibl model.global org subst

Members anchor cb fw gb lb milestone pb

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module tei

Used by msItem

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc] model.msQuoteLike[colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title] model.quoteLike[cit quote] model.respLike[author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor] decoNote filiation idno msItem msItemStruct textLang

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart

Members colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.correspActionPart model.pPart.data org

Members model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike respStmt

Members name orgName persName

Note   This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements.

Module tei

Used by adminInfo app biblStruct event glyph location model.global monogr msItemStruct notesStmt org place rdgGrp state

Members note witDetail

model.offsetLike groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name.

Module tei

Used by location model.nameLike

Members geogFeat offset

model.orgPart groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.

Module tei

Used by org

Members model.eventLike[event listEvent] listOrg listPerson listPlace

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by abstract application availability back binding bindingDesc cRefPattern calendar correction correspAction correspDesc custodialHist decoDesc editionStmt editorialDecl encodingDesc event front handDesc history hyphenation interpretation langUsage layoutDesc listRelation model.correspContextPart model.divPart msContents msDesc msFrag msItem msItemStruct msPart normalization nym objectDesc org particDesc person personGrp physDesc place prefixDef projectDesc publicationStmt punctuation quotation recordHist refsDecl samplingDecl scriptDesc seal sealDesc segmentation seriesStmt settingDesc sourceDesc sp state stdVals styleDefDecl supportDesc transcriptionDesc typeDesc

Members ab p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter.

Module tei

Used by back front

Members docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs]

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase pc w

Members model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg retrace secl sic supplied surplus unclear undo]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring.

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

Members abbr am choice ex expan subst

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description.

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials.

Module tei

Used by am model.pPart.edit

Members add corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg retrace secl sic supplied surplus unclear undo

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name.

Module namesdates

Used by model.nameLike

Members addName forename genName roleName surname

565

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members floruit persName state

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPerson org particDesc

Members org person personGrp

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person.

Module tei

Used by person personGrp

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listBibl msDesc] model.eventLike[event listEvent] model.persStateLike[floruit persName state] birth death idno

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

Module tei

Used by date dateline docImprint head l lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara origDate rdg time

Members model.graphicLike[binaryObject graphic media] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[distinct emph foreign gloss mentioned soCalled term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address email] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height measure measureGrp num width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[name orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] location state] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[abbr am choice ex expan subst] model.pPart.transcriptional[add corr damage del handShift mod orig redo reg retrace secl sic supplied surplus unclear undo]] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.phrase.xml model.ptrLike[ptr ref] model.segLike[c m pc phr s seg w] model.specDescLike

Note This class of elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.physDescPart groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

Module tei

Used by physDesc

Members accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

---

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPlace org place settingDesc

Members place

---

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name.

Module tei

Used by altIdentifier location model.placeStateLike msIdentifier

Members bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement

---

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike place

Members model.placeNamePart[bloc country district geogName placeName region settlement] location state

---

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members abstract calendarDesc correspDesc creation handNotes langUsage listTranspose particDesc settingDesc textClass

---

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference.

Module tei

Used by analytic application bibl biblStruct cit model.correspContextPart model.limitedPhrase model.phrase monogr notatedMusic relatedItem series transcriptionDesc

Members ptr ref

---

model.publicationStmtPart.agency groups the child elements of a <publicationStmt> element of the TEI header that indicate an authorising agent.

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members authority distributor publisher

Note   The 'agency' child elements, while not required, are required if one of the 'detail' child
elements is to be used. It is not valid to have a 'detail' child element without a preceding
'agency' child element.
See also model.publicationStmtPart.detail.

model.publicationStmtPart.detail groups the agency-specific child elements of the
<publicationStmt> element of the TEI header.

Module   tei

Used by   publicationStmt

Members   address availability date idno pubPlace

Note   A 'detail' child element may not occur unless an 'agency' child element precedes it.
See also model.publicationStmtPart.agency.

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between
chunk-level elements.

Module   tei

Used by   cit model.inter sp

Members   model.quoteLike[cit quote] floatingText q said

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module   tei

Used by   model.msItemPart model.qLike

Members   cit quote

model.rdgLike groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a
textual variation. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module   textcrit

Used by   app rdgGrp

Members   rdg

Note   This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI
customizations.

model.rdgPart groups elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary
manuscript or other witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module   textcrit

Used by   lem rdg

Members   lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Note   These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also
within any of their constituent elements.

model.resourceLike groups separate elements which constitute the content of a digital resource, as opposed to its metadata.

Module tei

Used by TEI teiCorpus

Members facsimile sourceDoc text

---

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by editionStmt model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmt

Members author editor funder meeting principal respStmt sponsor

---

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members c m pc phr s seg w

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

---

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts.

Module tei

Used by lg model.inter sp

Members stage

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

---

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc xenoData

---

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>.

Module tei

Used by msItem

Members binaryObject docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph graphic

11.3   Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

Module tei

Members annotationBlock change q said sp stage

Attributes Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (`<sp>`) in the body of the play are linked to `<castItem>` elements in the `<castList>` using the *who* attribute.

```
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Barnardo">Bernardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem type="role">
 <role xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
 <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<sp who="#Barnardo">
 <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
 <l n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp who="#Francisco">
 <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
 <l n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>
```

Note For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Module tei

Members cb gb milestone pb

Attributes Attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Recommended

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe the encoding does not take any position on this issue.

In the following lines from the 'Dream of the Rood', linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lāðost* and *reord-berendum*.

```
<ab> ...epesa tome
iu icpæs ȝeporden pita heardoft .
```

```
    leodum la<lb break="no"/> ðost ærþan ichim lifes
    peȝ rihtne ȝerymde reord be<lb break="no"/>
    rendum hpæt me þaȝepeorðode puldres ealdor ofer...
  </ab>
```

---

att.cReferencing provides an attribute which may be used to supply a *canonical reference* as a means of identifying the target of a pointer.

Module tei

Members gloss ptr ref term

Attributes Attributes

@cRef (canonical reference) specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference expressed using the scheme defined in a <refsDecl> element in the TEI header

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of *cRef* should be constructed so that when the algorithm for the resolution of canonical references (described in section 16.2.5. Canonical References) is applied to it the result is a valid URI reference to the intended target

The <refsDecl> to use may be indicated with the *decls* attribute.

Currently these Guidelines only provide for a single canonical reference to be encoded on any given <ptr> element.

---

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming[att.personal[addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName roleName surname] author birth bloc collection country death district editor event geogFeat geogName institution offset origPlace pubPlace region repository rs settlement state] correspDesc docAuthor docTitle funder material meeting objectType principal relation resp respStmt sponsor term title

Attributes Attributes

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
    <author>
     <name key="name 427308"
      type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative
    Council]</name>
    </author>
    <author>
     <name key="Hugo, Victor (1802-1885)"
      ref="http://www.idref.fr/026927608">Victor Hugo</name>
    </author>
```

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

No particular syntax is proposed for the values of the *key*

571

```
attribute, since its form will depend entirely on practice
within a given project. For the same reason, this attribute
is not recommended in data interchange, since there is no
way of ensuring that the values used by one project are
distinct from those used by another. In such a situation, a
preferable approach for magic tokens which follows standard
practice on the Web is to use a ref attribute whose value is
a tag URI as defined in RFC 4151.
```

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition or identity for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<name ref="http://viaf.org/viaf/109557338"
 type="person">Seamus Heaney</name>
```

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements or other resources by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

---

att.citing provides attributes for specifying the specific part of a bibliographic item being cited.

Module tei

Members biblScope citedRange

Attributes Attributes

@unit identifies the unit of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **volume** the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

page the element contains a page number or page range.

line the element contains a line number or line range.

chapter the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

column the element identifies a column.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the *unit* attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.word

---

att.coordinated provides attributes which can be used to position their parent element within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module transcr

Members line surface zone

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@lrx gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@lry gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@points identifies a two dimensional area within the bounding box specified by the other attributes by means of a series of pairs of numbers, each of which gives the x,y coordinates of a point on a line enclosing the area.

Status Optional

Datatype 3–∞ occurrences of teidata.point separated by whitespace

---

att.damaged provides attributes describing the nature of any physical damage affecting a reading.

Module tei

Members damage

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)) att.written (*@hand*)

@agent categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

@degree provides a coded representation of the degree of damage, either as a number between 0 (undamaged) and 1 (very extensively damaged), or as one of the codes high, medium, low, or unknown. The <damage> element with the *degree* attribute should only be used where the text may be read with some confidence; text supplied from other sources should be tagged as <supplied>.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.probCert

Note The <damage> element is appropriate where it is desired to record the fact of damage although this has not affected the readability of the text, for example a weathered inscription. Where the damage has rendered the text more or less illegible either the <unclear> tag (for partial illegibility) or the <gap> tag (for complete illegibility, with no text supplied) should be used, with the information concerning the damage given in the attribute values of these tags. See section 11.3.3.2. Use of the gap, del, damage, unclear,

and supplied Elements in Combination for discussion of the use of these tags in particular circumstances.

@group assigns an arbitrary number to each stretch of damage regarded as forming part of the same physical phenomenon.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.count

---

att.datable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or datable events.

Module tei

Members acquisition application binding birth bloc change country creation custEvent date death district event floruit geogFeat geogName idno licence location name offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName precision provenance region relation resp seal settlement stamp state time title

Attributes Attributes att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*) att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*) att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.pointer

   Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">
      <sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual content.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

   ```
   He was born on <date calendar="#gregorian">Feb. 22,
   1732</date>
   (<date calendar="#julian"
    when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).
   ```

   Note Note that the *calendar* attribute (unlike *datingMethod* defined in att.datable.custom) defines the calendar system of the date in the original material defined by the parent element, *not* the calendar to which the date is normalized.

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the datable item is understood to have occurred.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.pointer

This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.datable.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the att.datable.iso and att.datable.custom classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

---

att.datable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO).

Module namesdates

Members att.datable[acquisition application binding birth bloc change country creation custEvent date death district event floruit geogFeat geogName idno licence location name offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName precision provenance region relation resp seal settlement stamp state time title]

Attributes Attributes

@when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some custom standard form.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

  The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system
```
<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the
 <date when="1040-03-06"
  when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430
AH
  </date>.</p>
<p>The current world will end at the
 <date when="2012-12-21"
  when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
   (<date when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign
of Thutmose III</date>).</p>
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
 <date when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris
indictione IIII</date></p>Not all custom date formulations
will have Gregorian equivalents.The when-custom attribute
and other custom dating are not contrained to a datatype by
the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to
regularize and document their dating formats.
```

@notBefore-custom specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@notAfter-custom specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@from-custom indicates the starting point of the period in some custom standard form.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<event xml:id="FIRE1"
 datingMethod="#julian"
 from-custom="1666-09-02"
 to-custom="1666-09-05">
 <head>The Great Fire of London</head>
 <p>The Great Fire of London burned through a large part
    of the city of London.</p>
</event>
```

@to-custom indicates the ending point of the period in some custom standard form.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@datingPoint supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

@datingMethod supplies a pointer to a <calendar> element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```
Contayning the Originall, Antiquity, Increafe, Moderne
eftate, and defcription of that Citie, written in the yeare
<date when-custom="1598"
 calendar="#julian"
 datingMethod="#julian">1598</date>. by Iohn Stow
Citizen of London.In this example, the calendar attribute
points to a <calendar> element for the Julian calendar,
specifying that the text content of the <date> element is a
Julian date, and the datingMethod attribute also points to
the Julian calendar to indicate that the content of the
when-custom attribute value is Julian too.
<date when="1382-06-28"
 when-custom="6890-06-20"
 datingMethod="#creationOfWorld"> μηνὶ Ἰουνίου εἰς
<num>κ</num> ἔτους <num>ϛωϟ</num></date>In this example, a
date is given in a Mediaeval text measured "from the
creation of the world", which is normalised (in when) to the
Gregorian date, but is also normalized (in when-custom) to a
machine-actionable, numeric version of the date from the
Creation.
```

Note Note that the *datingMethod* attribute (unlike *calendar* defined in **att.datable**) defines the calendar or dating system to which the date described by the parent element is normalized (i.e. in the *when-custom* or other *X-custom* attributes), *not* the calendar of the original date in the element.

---

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard.

Module namesdates

Members att.datable[acquisition application binding birth bloc change country creation custEvent date death district event floruit geogFeat geogName idno licence location name offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName precision provenance region relation resp seal settlement stamp state time title]

Attributes Attributes

@when-iso supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations. <**date** when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>
<**date** when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</**date**>
<**time** when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**>
<**time** when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</**time**>
<**date** when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</**date**>

576

```
<time when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time when-iso="14">around two</time>
<time when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>All of the
examples of the when attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are
also valid with respect to this attribute.
He likes to be punctual. I said <q>
 <time when-iso="12">around noon</time>
</q>, and he showed up at <time when-iso="12:00:00">12
O'clock</time> on the dot.The second occurence of <time>
could have been encoded with the when attribute, as 12:00:00
is a valid time with respect to the W3C XML Schema Part 2:
Datatypes Second Edition specification. The first occurence
could not.
```

@notBefore-iso specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.
yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

@notAfter-iso specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g.
yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

@from-iso indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

@to-iso indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.temporal.iso

The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.

Note If both *when-iso* and *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Module tei

Members att.datable[acquisition application binding birth bloc change country creation custEvent date death district event floruit geogFeat geogName idno licence location name offset orgName origDate origPlace origin persName placeName precision provenance region relation resp seal settlement stamp state time title]

Attributes Attributes

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

```
     Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.  <p>
      <date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
      <date when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at
     3:25 in the morning</date>
      <time when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
     pm</time>
      <time when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
      <date when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
      <date when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
      <date when="---01">the first of the month</date>
      <date when="--08">August</date>
      <date when="2006">MMVI</date>
      <date when="0056">AD 56</date>
      <date when="-0056">56 BC</date>
     </p>
     This list begins in
     the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the
     Sunday after
     Pentecost, in that year the
     <date calendar="#julian"
      when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.
     <opener>
      <dateline>
       <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
       <date when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
      </dateline>
      <salute>To
         Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday
     <time when="12:00:00">noon.</time></opener>
```

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@when]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore|@notAfter| @from|@to" role="nonfatal">The @when attribute cannot be used with any other att.datable.w3c attributes.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@from]"> <sch:report test="@notBefore" role="nonfatal">The @from and @notBefore attributes cannot be used together.</ sch:report> </sch:rule>

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@to]"> <sch:report test="@notAfter" role="nonfatal">The @to and @notAfter attributes cannot be used together.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Example

```
<date from="1863-05-28" to="1863-06-01">28 May through 1 June 1863</date>
```

Note The value of these attributes should be a normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar.

The most commonly-encountered format for the date portion of a temporal attribute is `yyyy-mm-dd`, but `yyyy`, `--mm`, `---dd`, `yyyy-mm`, or `--mm-dd` may also be used. For the time part, the form `hh:mm:ss` is used.

Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

att.datcat provides the *dcr:datacat* and *dcr:ValueDatacat* attributes which are used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOCat at http://www.isocat.org/.

Module tei

Members att.segLike[c m pc phr s seg w]

Attributes Attributes

@datcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.
Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@valueDatcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.
Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example In this example *dcr:datcat* relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and *dcr:valueDatcat* the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
   xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
 <f name="POS"
  dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345" fVal="#commonNoun"
  dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/>
</fs>
```

Note ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Peristent IDentifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at http://www.isocat.org/12620/), which provides two attributes, *dcr:datcat* and *dcr:valueDatcat*.

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose *decls* attribute.

Module tei

Members availability bibl biblFull biblStruct correction correspDesc editorialDecl geoDecl hyphenation interpretation langUsage listApp listBibl listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace normalization particDesc projectDesc punctuation quotation refsDecl samplingDecl segmentation settingDesc sourceDesc stdVals styleDefDecl textClass xenoData

Attributes Attributes

   @default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.truthValue

   Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

   false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text. Only one element of a particular type may have a *default* attribute with a value of true.

att.declaring provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element.

Module tei

Members ab back body div facsimile floatingText front geo gloss graphic group lg media msDesc p ptr ref sourceDoc surface surfaceGrp term text

Attributes Attributes

   @decls identifies one or more *declarable elements* within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

   Status Optional

   Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3. Associating Contextual Information with a Text.

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.damaged[damage] att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo retrace subst substJoin undo] am birth corr date death event ex expan floruit gap geogFeat geogName location name offset org orgName origPlace origin persName person place placeName reg relation secl state surplus time unclear] depth dim dimensions height space width

Attributes Attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)

   @precision *Status* Optional

   Legal values are: **low**

   medium

   high

   @unit names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **character**

> **line**
>
> **metre**
>
> **cm**
>
> **mm**

@**quantity** specifies the length in the units specified

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.numeric

@**extent** indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.text
>
> *Suggested values include:* **unknown**
>
> > `<`**`gap`** `extent="5 words"/>`
> >
> > `<`**`height`** `extent="half the page"/>`

@**scope** where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Sample values include:* **all** measurement applies to all instances.
>
> > **most** measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.
> >
> > **range** measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

---

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

Module tei

Members div lg

Attributes Attributes att.metrical (@*met*, @*real*, @*rhyme*) att.fragmentable (@*part*)

@**org** (organization) specifies how the content of the division is organized.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Legal values are:* **composite** no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.
>
> > **uniform** the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.[Default]

@**sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
>
> *Legal values are:* **initial** division lacks material present at end in source.
>
> > **medial** division lacks material at start and end.
> >
> > **final** division lacks material at start.
> >
> > **unknown** position of sampled material within original unknown.

complete   division is not a sample.[Default]

---

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct change revisionDesc

Attributes Attributes

@status   describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley

proposed

published

recommendation

submitted

unfinished

withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
 <change when="2010-10-21"
  status="published"/>
 <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
 <change when="2010-08-02"
  status="embargoed"/>
 <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen"
  who="#MSM"/>
 <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft"
  who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

---

att.duration provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events.

Module spoken

Members att.timed[annotationBlock binaryObject media] date time

Attributes Attributes att.duration.w3c (*@dur*) att.duration.iso (*@dur-iso*)

Note   This 'superclass' provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the att.duration.w3c class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from

the att.duration.iso class. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes is rarely needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.duration.iso provides attributes for recording normalized temporal durations.

Module tei

Members att.duration[att.timed[annotationBlock binaryObject media] date time]

Attributes Attributes

@dur-iso (duration) indicates the length of this element in time.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.duration.iso

If both *when* and *dur* or *dur-iso* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. In order to represent a time range by a duration and its ending time the *when-iso* attribute must be used.

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

att.duration.w3c provides attributes for recording normalized temporal durations.

Module tei

Members att.duration[att.timed[annotationBlock binaryObject media] date time]

Attributes Attributes

@dur (duration) indicates the length of this element in time.
Status Optional
Datatype teidata.duration.w3c

If both *when* and *dur* are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. In order to represent a time range by a duration and its ending time the *when-iso* attribute must be used.

In providing a 'regularized' form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo retrace subst substJoin undo] am birth corr date death event ex expan floruit gap geogFeat geogName location name offset org orgName origPlace origin persName person place placeName reg relation secl state surplus time unclear

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace
>
> *Suggested values include:* **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.
>
> > **external** there is external evidence to support the intervention.
> >
> > **conjecture** the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* teidata.xTruthValue
>
> *Default* false

The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

Note Each pointer on the *source* (if present) corresponding to a witness or witness group should reference a bibliographic citation such as a <witness>, <msDesc>, or <bibl> element, or another external bibliographic citation, documenting the source concerned.

---

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb refState

Attributes Attributes

@ed (edition) supplies a sigil or other arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the
Fruit</l>
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our
woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
  <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,
<date>1937</date></bibl>
 <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">
  <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,
```

```
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>,
<date>1968</date></bibl>
</listBibl>
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of
   the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their
   strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials
of their ancient culture,
   still living their personal lives in zest and endless
   novelty of action, … I saw myself still
   preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
   con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>
```

att.enjamb (enjambement) provides an attribute which may be used to indicate enjambement of the parent element.

Module verse

Members l

Attributes Attributes

@enjamb (enjambement) indicates that the end of a verse line is marked by enjambement.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **no** the line is end-stopped

yes the line in question runs on into the next

weak the line is weakly enjambed

strong the line is strongly enjambed

Note The usual practice will be to give the value 'yes' to this attribute when enjambement is being marked, or the values 'weak' and 'strong' if degrees of enjambement are of interest; if no value is given, however, the attribute does not default to a value of 'no'; this allows the attribute to be omitted entirely when enjambement is not of particular interest.

att.fragmentable provides an attribute for representing fragmentation of a structural element, typically as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[c m pc phr s seg w] ab l p

Attributes Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure: for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

N (no) the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness[Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

> **M** (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element
>
> **F** (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element
>
> *Note* The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be be reconstituted.

---

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module tei

Members TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes att.global.rendition (*@rend*, *@style*, *@rendition*) att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*) att.global.analytic (*@ana*) att.global.facs (*@facs*) att.global.change (*@change*) att.global.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) att.global.source (*@source*)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* ID
>
> *Note* The *xml:id* attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference for an element; see section 3.10. Reference Systems.

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

Note The value of this attribute is always understood to be a single token, even if it contains space or other punctuation characters, and need not be composed of numbers only. It is typically used to specify the numbering of chapters, sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a 'tag' generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

```
<p> … The consequences of
   this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
 <foreign xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
   (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
   ancestral territorial organization.</p>
```

Note The xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately
enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the
document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify
xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a
different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that
needed for the associated resource element or elements, and
that a single TEI document may contain texts in many
languages.

The authoritative list of registered language subtags is
maintained by IANA and is available at
http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry.
For a good general overview of the construction of language
tags, see
http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/, and
for a practical step-by-step guide, see https://www.w3.org/
International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags.en.php.

The value used must conform with BCP 47. If the value is a
private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a
<language> element with a matching value for its *ident*
attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document
this value. Such documentation may also optionally be
supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain
consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task
Force definitions.

@xml:base provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

```
<div type="bibl">
 <head>Bibliography</head>
 <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/
Works/">
  <bibl>
   <author>
    <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
   </author>
   <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
    <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
   </ref>
```

```
         </bibl>
         <bibl>
          <author>
           <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
          </author>
          <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
           <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
          </ref>
         </bibl>
         <bibl>
          <author>
           <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
          </author>
          <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
           <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
          </ref>
         </bibl>
        </listBibl>
       </div>
```

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable

preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle xml:space correctly.

---

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text.

Module analysis

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic

note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.change supplies the *change* attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref

refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@change points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its children have been assigned by the encoder.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

---

att.global.facs provides an attribute used to express correspondence between an element containing transcribed text and all or part of an image representing that text.

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus

teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@facs (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

---

att.global.linking provides a set of attributes for hypertextual linking.

Module linking

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<group>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
  xml:lang="mi">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
     <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
 <text xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
  xml:lang="en">
  <body xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
   corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
   <div type="chapter">
    <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal
of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
     <p>…</p>
   </div>
  </body>
 </text>
</group>
```
In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each containing the same document in a different language. The correspondence is indicated using *corresp*. The language is indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the tag with the *corresp* and the tag pointed to by the *corresp* inherit the value from their immediate parent.

```
<place xml:id="LOND1"
 corresp="#LOND2 #GENI1">
 <placeName>London</placeName>
 <desc>The city of London...</desc>
</place>
<person xml:id="LOND2"
 corresp="#LOND1 #GENI1">
 <persName type="lit">London</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Allegorical character representing the city of
<ref target="LOND1.xml">London</ref>.
   </p>
 </note>
</person>
<person xml:id="GENI1"
 corresp="#LOND1 #LOND2">
 <persName type="lit">London's Genius</persName>
 <note>
  <p>Personification of London's genius. Appears as an
      allegorical character in mayoral shows.
   </p>
 </note>
</person>
```
In this example, a <place> element containing information about the city of London is linked with two <person> elements in a literary personography. This correspondence represents a slightly looser relationship than the one in the preceding example; there is no sense in which an allegorical character could be substituted for the physical city, or vice versa, but there is obviously a correspondence between them.

@synch (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@sameAs points to an element that is the same as the current element.
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.pointer

@copyOf points to an element of which the current element is a copy.
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.pointer
  Note Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.

@next points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.pointer

@prev (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.pointer

@exclude points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
  Status Optional
  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@select selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.
  Status Optional
  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
  Note This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

att.global.rendition provides rendering attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym

listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location
locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned
metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem
msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic
note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace
origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName
postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr
pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref
refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace
revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote
seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic
signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state
stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface
surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus
teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose
typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail
witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@rend (rendition) indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in
the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

```
<head rend="align(center) case(allcaps)">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle,
 <lb/>On Her <lb/>
 <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head>
```

Note These Guidelines make no binding recommendations for the
values of the *rend* attribute; the characteristics of visual
presentation vary too much from text to text and the
decision to record or ignore individual characteristics
varies too much from project to project. Some potentially
useful conventions are noted from time to time at
appropriate points in the Guidelines. The values of the *rend*
attribute are a set of sequence-indeterminate individual
tokens separated by whitespace.

@style contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines
the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.text

```
<head style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
 <lb/>
 <hi style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

Note Unlike the attribute values of *rend*, which uses whitespace
as a separator, the *style* attribute may contain whitespace.
This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic
information concerning the source, not any particular
output.
The formal language in which values for this attribute are
expressed may be specified using the <styleDefDecl> element
in the TEI header.

@rendition points to a description of the rendering or presentation used for this
element in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
<head rendition="#ac #sc">
 <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
Her
 <lb/>
 <hi rendition="#normal">New Blazing-World</hi>. </head>
<rendition xml:id="sc"
 scheme="css">font-variant: small-caps</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="normal"
 scheme="css">font-variant: normal</rendition>
<rendition xml:id="ac"
 scheme="css">text-align: center</rendition>
```

Note The *rendition* attribute is used in a very similar way to the *class* attribute defined for XHTML but with the important distinction that its function is to describe the appearance of the source text, not necessarily to determine how that text should be presented on screen or paper.

Where both *rendition* and *rend* are supplied, the latter is understood to override or complement the former.

Each URI provided should indicate a <rendition> element defining the intended rendition in terms of some appropriate style language, as indicated by the *scheme* attribute.

---

att.global.responsibility provides attributes indicating the agent responsible for some aspect of the text, the markup or something asserted by the markup, and the degree of certainty associated with it.

Module tei

Members att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace

revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote
seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic
signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state
stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface
surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus
teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose
typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail
witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes   Attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or
interpretation.

Status   Optional

Datatype   teidata.probCert

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or
interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status   Optional

Datatype   1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note   To reduce the ambiguity of a *resp* pointing directly to a person or
organization, we recommend that *resp* be used to point not to an agent
(<person> or <org>) but to a <respStmt>, <author>, <editor> or similar
element which clarifies the exact role played by the agent. Pointing to
multiple <respStmt>s allows the encoder to specify clearly each of the
roles played in part of a TEI file (creating, transcribing, encoding, editing,
proofing etc.).

Example

```
Blessed are the
<choice>
 <sic>cheesemakers</sic>
 <corr resp="#editor" cert="high">peacemakers</corr>
</choice>: for they shall be called the children of God.
```

Example

```
<lg>
 <l>Punkes, Panders, bafe extortionizing
     sla<choice>
   <sic>n</sic>
   <corr resp="#JENS1_transcriber">u</corr>
  </choice>es,</l>
</lg>
<respStmt xml:id="JENS1_transcriber">
 <resp when="2014">Transcriber</resp>
 <name>Janelle Jenstad</name>
</respStmt>
```

att.global.source provides an attribute used by elements to point to an external source.

Module   tei

Members   att.global[TEI ab abbr abstract accMat acquisition add addName addSpan additional
additions addrLine address adminInfo altIdentifier am analytic anchor annotationBlock
application author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblScope biblStruct binaryObject
binding bindingDesc birth bloc body c cRefPattern calendar calendarDesc catDesc catRef

catchwords category cb cell change charDecl charProp choice cit citedRange classCode classDecl collation collection colophon condition corr correction correspAction correspContext correspDesc country creation custEvent custodialHist damage date dateline death decoDesc decoNote del delSpan depth desc dim dimensions distinct distributor district div divGen docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editionStmt editor editorialDecl email emph encodingDesc epigraph event ex expan explicit extent facsimile figDesc figure fileDesc filiation finalRubric floatingText floruit foliation foreign forename front funder fw g gap gb genName geo geoDecl geogFeat geogName gloss glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes handShift head headItem headLabel height heraldry history hyphenation idno imprint incipit index institution interp interpGrp interpretation item join keywords l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langUsage language layout layoutDesc lb lg licence line link linkGrp list listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp m mapping material measure measureGrp media meeting mentioned metamark milestone mod monogr msContents msDesc msFrag msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation name namespace normalization notatedMusic note notesStmt num nym objectDesc objectType offset org orgName orig origDate origPlace origin p particDesc pb pc persName person personGrp phr physDesc place placeName postBox postCode precision prefixDef principal profileDesc projectDesc provenance ptr pubPlace publicationStmt publisher punctuation q quotation quote recordHist redo ref refState refsDecl reg region relatedItem relation rendition repository resp respStmt retrace revisionDesc roleName row rs rubric s said samplingDecl schemaRef scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol secl seg segmentation series seriesStmt settingDesc settlement sic signatures soCalled source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp speaker sponsor stage stamp state stdVals street styleDefDecl subst substJoin summary supplied support supportDesc surface surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates table tagUsage tagsDecl taxonomy teiCorpus teiHeader term text textClass textLang time title titleStmt transcriptionDesc transpose typeDesc typeNote unclear undo value variantEncoding w watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness xenoData zone]

Attributes Attributes

@source specifies the source from which some aspect of this element is drawn.

> *Status* Optional
>
> *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace
>
> *Note* The *source* attribute points to an external source. When used on elements describing schema components it locates the source for the ODD processor from which declarations and definitions for the components of the object being defined may be obtained. On other elements it provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn. These are provided as any form of URI, for example an absolute URI, a relative URI, or private scheme URI that is expanded to an absolute URI as documented in a <prefixDef>.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@source]"> <sch:report test="exists(for $i in tokenize(normalize-space(translate(@source,'#','')),'\s+') return if(not(id($i))) then $i else null)">No matching xml:id for reference(s): <sch:value-of select="string-join(for $i in tokenize(normalize-space(translate(@source,'#','')),'\s+') return if(not(id($i))) then $i else null, ', ')"/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

Example

```
<p> As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
  tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
    problematic and should be a contested term.</quote></p>
```

Example

```
<p>
 <quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
    are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
    seem to know.</quote>
</p>
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
 <title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,
 <edition>15th edition</edition>.
 <pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:
 <publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>
   (<date>2003</date>),
 <biblScope unit="page">p.147</biblScope>.
 </bibl>
```

Example

```
<elementRef key="p" source="tei:2.0.1"/>
```

Include in the schema an element named <p> available from the TEI P5 2.0.1 release.

---

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written.

Module tei

Members handNote handShift scriptNote typeNote

Attributes Attributes

@scribe gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.name

@scribeRef points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@script characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.name separated by whitespace

@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a <scriptNote> element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

Usually either *script* or *scriptRef*, and similarly, either *scribe* or *scribeRef*, will be supplied.

---

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module tei

Members att.media[binaryObject graphic] ptr ref

Attributes Attributes

 @mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Example In this example *mimeType* is used to indicate that the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
 target="http://sourceforge.net/p/tei/code/HEAD/tree/trunk/P5/Source/
guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides an attribute for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, using a value taken from a standard taxonomy. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions (MIME) Media Type system. This typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority (IANA). The *mimeType* attribute must have a value taken from this list.

---

att.interpLike provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation.

Module tei

Members interp interpGrp

Attributes Attributes

 @type indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage.

  Status Recommended

  Datatype teidata.enumerated

  Sample values include: **image** identifies an image in the passage.

   character identifies a character associated with the passage.

   theme identifies a theme in the passage.

   allusion identifies an allusion to another text.

 @inst (instances) points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

  Status Optional

  Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

  Note The current element should be an analytic one. The element pointed at should be a textual one.

---

att.measurement provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

Module tei

Members measure measureGrp

Attributes Attributes

@unit indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **m** (metre) SI base unit of length

kg (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

s (second) SI base unit of time

Hz (hertz) SI unit of frequency

Pa (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

Ω (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

L (litre) 1 dm³

t (tonne) 10^3 kg

ha (hectare) 1 hm²

Å (ångström) 10^{-10} m

mL (millilitre)

cm (centimetre)

dB (decibel) see remarks, below

kbit (kilobit) 10^3 or 1000 bits

Kibit (kibibit) 2^{10} or 1024 bits

kB (kilobyte) 10^3 or 1000 bytes

KiB (kibibyte) 2^{10} or 1024 bytes

MB (megabyte) 10^6 or 1 000 000 bytes

MiB (mebibyte) 2^{20} or 1 048 576 bytes

Note If the measurement being represented is not expressed in a particular unit, but rather is a number of discrete items, the unit count should be used, or the *unit* attribute may be left unspecified.

Wherever appropriate, a recognized SI unit name should be used (see further `http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/`; `http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). The list above is indicative rather than exhaustive.

@quantity specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@commodity indicates the substance that is being measured

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Note In general, when the commodity is made of discrete entities, the plural form should be used, even when the measurement is of only one of them.

This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

```
<l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal"
  commodity="ice cream">half
    a gallon</measure>, baby</l>
<l>So won't you go and buy <measure quantity="1.893" unit="L"
  commodity="ice cream">half
    a gallon</measure>, baby?</l>
```

Note The unit should normally be named using the standard abbreviation for an SI unit (see further `http://www.bipm.org/en/publications/si-brochure/`; `http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/`). However, encoders may also specify measurements using informally defined units such as lines or characters.

att.media provides attributes for specifying display and related properties of external media.

Module tei

Members binaryObject graphic

Attributes Attributes att.internetMedia (*@mimeType*)

@width Where the media are displayed, indicates the display width
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement

@height Where the media are displayed, indicates the display height
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.outputMeasurement

@scale Where the media are displayed, indicates a scale factor to be applied when generating the desired display size
  Status Optional
  Datatype teidata.numeric

att.metrical defines a set of attributes which certain elements may use to represent metrical information.

Module verse

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[c m pc phr s seg w] l

Attributes Attributes

@met (metrical structure, conventional) contains a user-specified encoding for the conventional metrical structure of the element.
  Status Recommended
  Datatype token
  Note The pattern may be specified by means of either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. +−+-+-+-+-). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.
  Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical pattern for the element concerned is understood to be inherited from its parent.

@real (metrical structure, realized) contains a user-specified encoding for the actual realization of the conventional metrical structure applicable to the element.

Status Optional

Datatype token

Note The pattern may be specified by means of either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. +−+-+-+-+-). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.

   Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical realization for the element concerned is understood to be identical to that specified or implied for the *met* attribute.

@rhyme (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.

Status Recommended

Datatype token

Note By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for *met* by use of the <metDecl> element in the TEI header.

   When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

att.milestoneUnit provides an attribute to indicate the type of section which is changing at a specific milestone.

Module core

Members milestone refState

Attributes Attributes

@unit provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **page** physical page breaks (synonymous with the <pb> element).

   column column breaks.

   line line breaks (synonymous with the <lb> element).

   book any units termed book, liber, etc.

   poem individual poems in a collection.

   canto cantos or other major sections of a poem.

   speaker changes of speaker or narrator.

   stanza stanzas within a poem, book, or canto.

   act acts within a play.

   scene scenes within a play or act.

   section sections of any kind.

   absent passages not present in the reference edition.

> **unnumbered** passages present in the text, but not to be included as part
> of the reference.
> ```
> <milestone n="23"
>  ed="La"
>  unit="Dreissiger"/>
> ... <milestone n="24"
>  ed="AV"
>  unit="verse"/> ...
> ```
> *Note* If the milestone marks the beginning of a piece of text not
>   present in the reference edition, the special value *absent*
>   may be used as the value of *unit*. The normal interpretation
>   is that the reference edition does not contain the text
>   which follows, until the next <milestone> tag for the
>   edition in question is encountered.
>
>   In addition to the values suggested, other terms may be
>   appropriate (e.g. *Stephanus* for the Stephanus numbers in
>   Plato).

---

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof.

Module msdescription

Members explicit incipit msContents msItem msItemStruct quote

Attributes Attributes

@defective indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete
through loss or damage.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.xTruthValue

Default false

Deprecated	The value will no longer be a default after 2017-09-05

In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

---

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

Module tei

Members att.personal[addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName
roleName surname] author birth bloc collection country death district editor event geogFeat
geogName institution offset origPlace pubPlace region repository rs settlement state

Attributes Attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this
name in the form of a set of whitespace-separated values, for example the
occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement.

Module header

Members cRefPattern prefixDef

Attributes Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.pattern

Note The syntax used should follow that defined by W3C XPath syntax. Note that parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the *replacementPattern* attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a 'replacement pattern', that is, the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI containing references to groups in the *matchPattern* which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, complete the URI.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.replacement

Note The strings *$1*, *$2* etc. are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by *matchPattern* (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression.

If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as %24.

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name.

Module tei

Members addName forename genName name orgName persName placeName roleName surname

Attributes Attributes att.naming (@*role*, @*nymRef*) (att.canonical (@*key*, @*ref*))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

---

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

Module tei

Members addSpan figure fw label metamark notatedMusic note stage witDetail

Attributes Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed.

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.enumerated separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

```
<add place="margin">[An addition written in the
margin]</add>
<add place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
    foot of the current page and also on the facing
page]</add>
<note place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

---

att.pointing provides a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

Module tei

Members att.pointing.group[linkGrp] calendar catRef citedRange gloss join licence link locus note ptr ref substJoin term witDetail

Attributes Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by *target*, using a 'language tag' generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.language

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)][@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="@target">@targetLang should only be used on <sch:name/> if @target is specified.</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

```
<linkGrp xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
 <ptr xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
</linkGrp>
```
In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines
pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration
of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in
Swahili.

Note The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private
use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a
<language> element with a matching value for its *ident*
attribute should be supplied in the TEI header to document
this value. Such documentation may also optionally be
supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain
consistent with their (IETF) Internet Engineering Task
Force definitions.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI
References

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace.
Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted
inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it
should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g.
`TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of
that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is
not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a
pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to
find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding
(possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.pointing.group provides a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups
of pointer elements.

Module tei

Members linkGrp

Attributes Attributes att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@domains optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements
indicated by the contents of this element lie.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note If this attribute is supplied every element specified as a target must be contained within the element or elements named by it. An application may choose whether or not to report failures to satisfy this constraint as errors, but may not access an element of the right identifier but in the wrong context. If this attribute is not supplied, then target elements may appear anywhere within the target document.

@targFunc (target function) describes the function of each of the values of the *target* attribute of the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags.

Status Optional

Datatype 2–∞ occurrences of teidata.word separated by whitespace

Note The number of separate values must match the number of values in the *target* attribute in the enclosed <link>, <join>, or <alt> tags (an intermediate <ptr> element may be needed to accomplish this). It should also match the number of values in the *domains* attribute, of the current element, if one has been specified.

---

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module tei

Members att.dimensions[att.damaged[damage] att.editLike[att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo retrace subst substJoin undo] am birth corr date death event ex expan floruit gap geogFeat geogName location name offset org orgName origPlace origin persName person place placeName reg relation secl state surplus time unclear] depth dim dimensions height space width] num precision

Attributes Attributes

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.numeric

@confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by *min* and *max*, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.probability

Example

```
The MS. was lost in transmission by mail from <del rend="overstrike">
 <gap reason="illegible"
  extent="one or two letters" atLeast="1" atMost="2" unit="chars"/>
</del> Philadelphia to the Graphic office, New York.
```

att.rdgPart provides attributes to mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness. [«#TCAPMI»]

Module textcrit

Members lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Attributes Attributes

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more sigla indicating the witnesses to this reading beginning or ending at this point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module tei

Members graphic media schemaRef

Attributes Attributes

@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

Status Required

Datatype teidata.pointer

att.scoping provides attributes for selecting particular elements within a document.

Module tei

Members certainty precision

Attributes Attributes

@target points at one or several elements or sets of elements by means of one or more data pointers, using the URI syntax.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

```
Elizabeth went to <persName xml:id="ESSEX">Essex</persName>
<certainty target="#ESSEX"
 locus="name"
 degree="0.6"/>
```

@match supplies an arbitrary XPath expression using the syntax defined in XSLT2 which identifies a set of nodes, selected within the context identified by the *target* attribute if this is supplied, or within the context of the parent element if it is not.

Status Optional

Datatype

```
      <gap reason="cancelled">
       <certainty match="@reason"
         locus="value"
         cert="low"/>
      </gap>
```

Note The expression of certainty applies to the nodeset
   identified by the value of the *target* attribute, possibly
   modified additionally by the value of the *match* attribute.
   If more than one identifier is given, the implication is
   that all elements (or nodesets) are intended. The *match*
   attribute may also be used as a means of identifying groups
   of elements.

   If *target* and *match* are present, *target* selects an element
   and the XPath expression in *match* is evaluated in the
   context of that element. If neither attribute is present,
   the expression applies to its parent element. If only *target*
   is given, the expression refers to the selected element or
   nodeset. If only *match* is given, the XPath expression is
   evaluated in the context of the parent element of the
   bearing element.

   Note that the value of the *target* attribute may include an
   XPointer expression including an XPath expression (see
   16.2.4. TEI XPointer Schemes).

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

Module tei

Members c m pc phr s seg w

Attributes Attributes att.metrical (@*met*, @*real*, @*rhyme*) att.datcat (@*datcat*, @*valueDatcat*)
   att.fragmentable (@*part*)

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Note Attribute values will often vary depending on the type of element to which
      they are attached. For example, a <cl>, may take values such as
      coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject,
      predicate etc. may be more appropriate. Such constraints will typically be
      implemented by a project-defined customization.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content.

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct correspAction event idno item list listApp listBibl listChange
   listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation listWit msDesc nym org person
   personGrp place relation term witness

Attributes Attributes

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains
   it.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.word

```
      David's other principal backer, Josiah
      ha-Kohen <index indexName="NAMES">
```

```
  <term sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.
Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
David's own first
cousin.
```

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping
of entries in an index. It provides a sequence of characters
which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the
desired order; specifics of sort key construction are
application-dependent

Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence
of machine-readable character sets; in English-language
dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear
alphabetized under 'fourh', and *McCoy* may be alphabetized
under 'maccoy', while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in
numeric order 'alphabetized' between 'a-' and 'AA'. The sort
key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry
does not suffice to determine its location.

---

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing
mechanisms rather than by enclosing it.

Module tei

Members addSpan cb delSpan gb index lb metamark milestone mod pb redo retrace undo

Attributes Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

Schematron The @spanTo attribute must point to an element following the
current element <sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2)) and
following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/@spanTo,2)]">The element
indicated by @spanTo (<sch:value-of select="@spanTo"/>) must follow
the current element <sch:name/> </sch:assert> </sch:rule>

The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the
pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the *spanTo* attribute (if
any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive
with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of
the span is immediately following the element itself.

---

att.styleDef provides attributes to specify the name of a formal definition language used to
provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members rendition styleDefDecl

Attributes Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no value for the @scheme attribute is provided, then the default assumption should be that CSS is in use.

@schemeVersion supplies a version number for the style language provided in *scheme*.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.versionNumber

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@schemeVersion]">
<sch:assert test="@scheme and not(@scheme = 'free')">
@schemeVersion can only be used if @scheme is specified. </sch:assert>
</sch:rule>

Note If *schemeVersion* is used, then *scheme* should also appear, with a value other than free.

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

Module tei

Members cell row

Attributes Attributes

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Suggested values include: **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.[Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the *role* attribute of the parent <row> element.

@rows indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Default 1

Note A value greater than one indicates that this cell spans several rows. Where several cells span multiple rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

Default 1

Note A value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns. Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

att.textCritical defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Members lem rdg rdgGrp

Attributes Attributes att.written (*@hand*)

> **@type** classifies the reading according to some useful typology.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
> >
> > *Sample values include:* **substantive** the reading offers a substantive variant.
> > > **orthographic** the reading differs only orthographically, not in substance, from other readings.

> **@cause** classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.enumerated
> >
> > *Sample values include:* **homeoteleuton**
> > > **homeoarchy**
> > >
> > > **paleographicConfusion**
> > >
> > > **haplography**
> > >
> > > **dittography**
> > >
> > > **falseEmendation**

> **@varSeq** (variant sequence) provides a number indicating the position of this reading in a sequence, when there is reason to presume a sequence to the variants.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.count
> >
> > *Note* Different variant sequences could be coded with distinct number trails: 1-2-3 for one sequence, 5-6-7 for another. More complex variant sequences, with (for example) multiple branchings from single readings, may be expressed through the <join> element.

> **@require** points to other readings that are required when adopting the current reading or lemma.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

> This element class defines attributes inherited by <rdg>, <lem>, and <rdgGrp>.

---

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map.

Module tei

Members annotationBlock binaryObject media

Attributes Attributes att.duration (att.duration.w3c (*@dur*)) (att.duration.iso (*@dur-iso*))

> **@start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.pointer
> >
> > *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

> **@end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.
> > *Status* Optional
> >
> > *Datatype* teidata.pointer
> >
> > *Note* If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources.

Module tei

Members add addSpan del delSpan mod redo retrace subst substJoin undo

Attributes Attributes att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@precision*, *@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) att.written (*@hand*)

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common.

Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.enumerated

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.count

att.translatable provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

Module tei

Members desc gloss

Attributes Attributes

@versionDate specifies the date on which the source text was extracted and sent to the translator

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.temporal.w3c

   Note The *versionDate* attribute can be used to determine whether a translation might need to be revisited, by comparing the modification date on the containing file with the *versionDate* value on the translation. If the file has changed, changelogs can be checked to see whether the source text has been modified since the translation was made.

---

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

Module tei

Members att.pointing.group[linkGrp] TEI ab accMat add addName addSpan altIdentifier am anchor application bibl biblStruct binaryObject bloc c cb change charProp cit collection corr correspDesc country custEvent damage date decoNote del delSpan desc dim district event explicit figure filiation finalRubric floatingText forename g gb genName geogFeat geogName gloss group head incipit join label lb lg line link listApp listBibl listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location m mapping measureGrp media milestone mod msDesc msFrag msName msPart name notatedMusic note nym offset org orgName origDate origPlace pb pc persName phr place placeName provenance ptr quote ref reg region relatedItem relation roleName rs rubric s schemaRef seal seg settlement space stamp state surface surfaceGrp surname table teiCorpus term text time w xenoData zone

Attributes Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

```
<div type="verse">
 <head>Night in Tarras</head>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
 <lg type="stanza">
  <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
  <l>…</l>
 </lg>
</div>
```

   Note The *type* attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of **att.typed,** usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

   Status Optional

   Datatype teidata.enumerated

   Note The *subtype* attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its *type* attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/>

element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert> </sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. Modification of Attribute and Attribute Value Lists .

---

att.witnessed supplies the attribute used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [«#TCAPLL»]

Module textcrit

Members lem rdg

Attributes Attributes

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a space-delimited list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of teidata.pointer separated by whitespace

Note If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted.

This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child <wit> element.

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@wit]"> <sch:report test="exists(for $i in tokenize(normalize-space(translate(@wit,'#','')),'\s+') return if(not(id($i))) then $i else null)">No matching xml:id for reference(s): <sch:value-of select="string-join(for $i in tokenize(normalize-space(translate(@wit,'#','')),'\s+') return if(not(id($i))) then $i else null, ', ')"/>.</sch:report> </sch:rule>

---

att.written provides an attribute to indicate the hand in which the textual content of an element was written in the source being transcribed.

Module tei

Members att.damaged[damage] att.textCritical[lem rdg rdgGrp] att.transcriptional[add addSpan del delSpan mod redo retrace subst substJoin undo] ab div fw head hi label line note p seg text zone

Attributes Attributes

@hand points to a <handNote> element describing the hand considered responsible for the textual content of the element concerned.

Status Optional

Datatype teidata.pointer

11.4 Macros

---

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials.

Module tei

Used by desc figDesc meeting rendition tagUsage witness

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.limitedContent =
   ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

Module tei

Used by ab add corr damage del docEdition emph hi mod orig p ref reg retrace secl seg sic supplied surplus title

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
  <elementRef key="lg"/>
  <classRef key="model.lLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.paraContent =
   (
     text
    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.phrase    | tei_model.inter    | tei_model.global
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

Module tei

Used by abbr addName addrLine author biblScope birth bloc catchwords citedRange colophon country death distinct distributor district docAuthor docDate edition editor email expan explicit extent finalRubric floruit foreign forename fw genName geoDecl geogFeat

geogName gloss headItem headLabel heraldry incipit label material measure mentioned
name num objectType offset orgName origPlace persName phr placeName pubPlace
publisher region roleName rs rubric s secFol settlement soCalled speaker stamp street
surname term textLang watermark wit witDetail

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq =
   ( text | tei_model.gLike | tei_model.phrase | tei_model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents.

Module tei

Used by authority classCode funder language principal resp sponsor

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.limitedPhrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.phraseSeq.limited =
   ( text | tei_model.limitedPhrase | tei_model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

Module tei

Used by accMat acquisition additions cell change collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation handNote item layout licence metamark musicNotation note origin provenance q quote said scriptNote signatures source stage summary support surrogates typeNote

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
  <classRef key="model.phrase"/>
  <classRef key="model.inter"/>
  <classRef key="model.divPart"/>
  <classRef key="model.global"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_macro.specialPara =
   (
      text
    | tei_model.gLike    | tei_model.phrase    | tei_model.inter    | tei_model.divPart
```

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c collection depth dim ex height institution locus mapping msName repository unclear
value width

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="0"
  maxOccurs="unbounded">
  <textNode/>
  <classRef key="model.gLike"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `tei_macro.xtext = ( text | tei_model.gLike )*`

11.5 Datatypes

teidata.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCertElement:

- certainty/@cert

- precision/@precision

Content model

```
<content>
 <valList type="closed">
  <valItem ident="high"/>
  <valItem ident="medium"/>
  <valItem ident="low"/>
  <valItem ident="unknown"/>
```

```
  </valList>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter.

teidata.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- handDesc/@hands
- layout/@columns
- layout/@ruledLines
- layout/@writtenLines
- refState/@length
- table/@rows
- table/@cols
- tagUsage/@occurs
- tagUsage/@withId
- zone/@rotate

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="nonNegativeInteger"/>
</content>
```

Declaration `tei_teidata.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Note Any positive integer value or zero is permitted

teidata.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note   A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either `.` or `,` as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is *0*, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator `T` must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

---

teidata.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="duration"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note   A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using `.` as the decimal point). If any number is *0*,

then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first 'time' number-letter pair.

For complete details, see the W3C specification.

---

teidata.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- abbr/@type
- app/@type
- availability/@status
- certainty/@locus
- correction/@status
- correction/@method
- correspAction/@type
- dimensions/@type
- distinct/@type
- divGen/@type
- fw/@type
- gap/@agent
- geoDecl/@datum
- hyphenation/@eol
- idno/@type
- join/@scope
- lb/@break
- list/@type
- measure/@type
- normalization/@method
- num/@type
- objectDesc/@form
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- person/@role
- person/@age
- personGrp/@role
- personGrp/@age
- punctuation/@marks
- punctuation/@placement
- q/@type
- quotation/@marks

- relation/@name
- rendition/@scope
- space/@dim
- stage/@type
- supportDesc/@material
- surface/@attachment
- title/@type
- title/@level
- unclear/@agent
- variantEncoding/@method
- variantEncoding/@location
- witDetail/@type

Content model `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.enumerated = teidata.word`

Note   Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a `<valList>` element.

teidata.fragId

Module derived-module-tei-DLL

Used by Element:

- app/@ana
- lem/@ana
- rdg/@ana
- rdgGrp/@ana

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="#(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.fragId = token { pattern = "#(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

teidata.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- language/@ident

- textLang/@mainLang
- textLang/@otherLangs

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef name="language"/>
  <valList>
   <valItem ident=""/>
  </valList>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration `tei_teidata.language = xsd:language | ( "" )`

Note The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 5646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice.

A 'language tag', per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at `http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry`. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at `http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html`. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case; the list of codes can be searched or browsed at `https://www.iso.org/obp/ui/#search/code/`. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at `http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm`.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes 'are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags'.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with `x-`) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be

TEI-conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been 'grandfathered' from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with x-, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header. Examples include

sn Shona

zh-TW Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl Polish

es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

---

teidata.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- application/@ident
- index/@indexName
- join/@result
- tagUsage/@gi
- transcriptionDesc/@ident

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="Name"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.name = xsd:Name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see `http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name`): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

---

teidata.namespace defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML Technical Recommendation.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- namespace/@name

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.namespace = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*

teidata.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- num/@value

- precision/@stdDeviation

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef name="double"/>
  <dataRef name="token"
   restriction="(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)"/>
  <dataRef name="decimal"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.numeric =
    xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\-?[\d]+/\-?[\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```

Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio.

To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, 'E notation', a variant of 'exponential notation', may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3.

A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

teidata.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.outputMeasurement =
   token
   {
      pattern = "[\-+]?\d+(\.\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
   }
```

Example

```
<figure>
 <head>The TEI Logo</head>
 <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
      between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned>
underneath, all on a white
      background.</figDesc>
 <graphic height="600px" width="600px"
  url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note   These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

teidata.pattern defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="token"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.pattern = token`

Note   A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern H(ä|ae?)ndel *matches* each of the three strings)Wikipedia

This TEI datatype is mapped to the XSD token datatype, and may therefore contain any string of characters. However, it is recommended that the value used conform to the particular flavour of regular expression syntax supported by XSD Schema.

teidata.point defines the data type used to express a point in cartesian space.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="(\-?[0-9]+\.?[0-9]*,\-?[0-9]+\.?[0-9]*)"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.point =
    token { pattern = "(\-?[0-9]+\.?[0-9]*,\-?[0-9]+\.?[0-9]*)" }
```

Example

```
<facsimile>
 <surface ulx="0" uly="0" lrx="400" lry="280">
  <zone points="220,100 300,210 170,250 123,234">
   <graphic url="handwriting.png "/>
  </zone>
 </surface>
</facsimile>
```

Note A point is defined by two numeric values, which may be expressed in any notation permitted.

teidata.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI, absolute or relative, pointing to some other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- app/@from
- app/@to
- catRef/@scheme
- certainty/@given
- change/@target
- classCode/@scheme
- event/@where
- g/@ref
- gap/@hand
- handShift/@new
- keywords/@scheme
- locus/@scheme
- locusGrp/@scheme
- metamark/@target
- msContents/@class
- msItem/@class
- msItemStruct/@class
- note/@targetEnd
- nym/@parts
- redo/@target
- relatedItem/@target
- relation/@passive
- relation/@active
- relation/@mutual
- space/@resp

- tagUsage/@render
- unclear/@hand
- undo/@target
- w/@lemmaRef
- witDetail/@wit

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="anyURI"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.pointer = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers* (IRIs) mapping to URIs. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http://`ال‌اتصالات.مصر/م‌وقع.وزارة- is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

---

teidata.prefix defines a range of values that may function as a URI scheme name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- prefixDef/@ident

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]*"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.prefix = token { pattern = "[a-z][a-z0-9\+\.\-]*" }
```

Note This datatype is used to constrain a string of characters to one that can be used as a URI scheme name according to RFC 3986, section 3.1. Thus only the 26 lowercase letters a–z, the 10 digits 0–9, the plus sign, the period, and the hyphen are permitted, and the value must start with a letter.

---

teidata.probCert defines a range of attribute values which can be expressed either as a numeric probability or as a coded certainty value.

Module tei

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef key="teidata.probability"/>
  <dataRef key="teidata.certainty"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.probCert = teidata.probability | teidata.certainty
```

teidata.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module tei

Used by teidata.probCertElement:

- certainty/@degree

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="double"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.probability = xsd:double`

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

teidata.replacement defines attribute values which contain a replacement template.

Module tei

Used by

Content model `<content> <textNode/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.replacement = text`

teidata.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- person/@sex
- personGrp/@sex

Content model `<content> <dataRef key="teidata.word"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.sex = teidata.word`

Note Values for attributes using this datatype may be locally defined by a project, or may refer to an external standard, such as vCard's sex property `http://microformats.org/wiki/gender-formats` (in which M indicates male, F female, O other, N none or not applicable, U unknown), or the often used ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes* `http://standards.iso.org/ittf/ PubliclyAvailableStandards/c036266_ISO_IEC_5218_2004(E_F).zip` (in which 0 indicates unknown; 1 male; 2 female; and 9 not applicable, although the ISO standard is widely considered inadequate); cf. CETH's *Recommendations for Inclusive Data Collection of Trans People* `http://transhealth.ucsf.edu/trans?page=lib-data-collection`.

teidata.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module tei

629

Used by

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
  <dataRef name="token"
   restriction="[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.temporal.iso =
    xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:+\-]+" }
```

Note   If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format.

While ISO 8601 permits the use of both `00:00` and `24:00` to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of `24:00`.

---

teidata.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition* specification.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- docDate/@when

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef name="date"/>
  <dataRef name="gYear"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gDay"/>
  <dataRef name="gYearMonth"/>
  <dataRef name="gMonthDay"/>
  <dataRef name="time"/>
```

```
  <dataRef name="dateTime"/>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.temporal.w3c =
   xsd:date
 | xsd:gYear
 | xsd:gMonth
 | xsd:gDay
 | xsd:gYearMonth
 | xsd:gMonthDay
 | xsd:time
 | xsd:dateTime
```

Note   If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

---

teidata.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- distinct/@time
- distinct/@space
- distinct/@social
- refState/@delim
- rendition/@selector
- w/@lemma

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="string"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.text = string`

Note   Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'token' in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

---

teidata.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- listChange/@ordered
- note/@anchored
- pc/@pre
- surface/@flipping
- tagsDecl/@partial

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="boolean"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note   The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue.

---

teidata.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI or Unicode version number.

Module   tei

Used by   Element:

- TEI/@version
- teiCorpus/@version

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d]+){0,2}" }
```

Note   The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (http://unicode.org/versions/). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

---

teidata.versionNumber defines the range of attribute values used for version numbers.

Module   tei

Used by   Element:

- application/@version
- transcriptionDesc/@version

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.versionNumber =
   token { pattern = "[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*(\.[\d]+[a-z]*[\d]*){0,3}" }
```

---

teidata.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by teidata.enumerated teidata.sexElement:

- app/@loc
- binaryObject/@encoding
- certainty/@assertedValue
- hi/@rend
- locus/@from
- locus/@to
- m/@baseForm
- media/@mimeType
- metamark/@function
- org/@role
- origDate/@evidence
- personGrp/@size
- secl/@reason
- supplied/@evidence
- surplus/@reason
- unclear/@reason

Content model

```
<content>
 <dataRef name="token"
  restriction="(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+"/>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

---

teidata.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- binding/@contemporary
- said/@aloud
- said/@direct
- seal/@contemporary

Content model

```
<content>
 <alternate minOccurs="1" maxOccurs="1">
  <dataRef name="boolean"/>
  <valList>
   <valItem ident="unknown"/>
   <valItem ident="inapplicable"/>
  </valList>
 </alternate>
</content>
```

Declaration

```
tei_teidata.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | ( "unknown" | "inapplicable" )
```

Note   In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

---

teidata.xmlName defines attribute values which contain an XML name.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- schemaRef/@key

Content model `<content> <dataRef name="NCName"/></content>`

Declaration `tei_teidata.xmlName = xsd:NCName`

Note   The rules defining an XML name form a part of the XML Specification.